教辅资料站
电子教辅 试卷练习
知识总结 备课资源
扫码关注获取更多学习资料

# 典中点®

综合应用创新题 典中点

一本在做题中教会你学习方法的书



## 六年级英语(下)

WY版 按100:1配赠教师用书

（三年级起点）

内含 名师划重点 基础默写本

经典好题·精妙点拨

吉林教育出版社

荣德基 主编

# 典中点

综合应用创新题 典中点

一本在做题中教会你学习方法的书



# 六年级 英语

下（WY版）

主　　编：荣德基
本册主编：袁　婷

微信公众号
教辅资料站

吉林教育出版社

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

# 目录 CONTENTS

## Module 1


Unit 1 I want a hot dog, please. …… 1

Unit 2 What do you want to eat? …… 3

**Module 1 能力过关练** …… 5


## Module 2


Unit 1 When are we going to eat? … 7

Unit 2 It will snow in Harbin. …… 9

**Module 2 能力过关练** …… 11


## Module 3


Unit 1 The sun is shining. …… 13

Unit 2 The cows are drinking water. …… 15

**Module 3 能力过关练** …… 17


## Module 4


Unit 1 The balloons are flying away! …… 19

Unit 2 The apples are falling down the stairs. …… 21

**Module 4 能力过关练** …… 23


## Module 5


Unit 1 He is playing the *suona*, but the phone rings. …… 25

Unit 2 He's riding his bike, but it starts to rain. …… 27

**Module 5 能力过关练** …… 29


## Module 6


Unit 1 It was Daming's birthday yesterday. …… 31

Unit 2 The name of the spaceship is *Shenzhou V*. …… 33

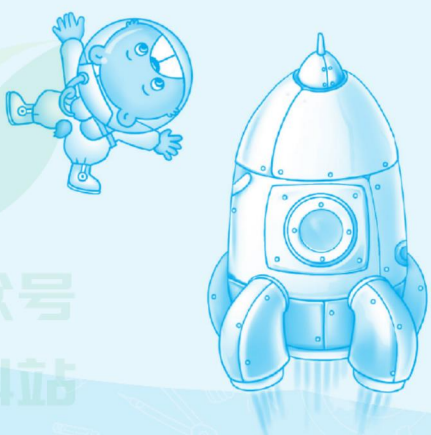
**Module 6 能力过关练** …… 35


## Module 7


Unit 1 He spent about twenty-one hours in space. …… 37

Unit 2 She couldn't see or hear. …… 39

**Module 7 能力过关练** …… 41



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

## Module 8

Unit 1 Why do you have cups on your heads? …… 43
Unit 2 Why are you wearing a hat? …… 45
Module 8 能力过关练 …… 47

## Module 9

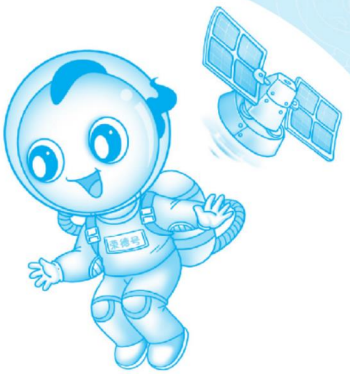
Unit 1 Best wishes to you! …… 49
Unit 2 Wishing you happiness every day. …… 51
Module 9 能力过关练 …… 53

## Module 10

Unit 1 We're going to different schools. …… 55
Unit 2 What are you going to study? …… 57
Module 10 能力过关练 …… 59

## 期末复习训练

Module 1 复习训练…… 61
Module 2 复习训练…… 63
Module 3 复习训练…… 65
Module 4 复习训练…… 67
Module 5 复习训练…… 69
Module 6 复习训练…… 71
Module 7 复习训练…… 73
Module 8 复习训练…… 75



Module 9 复习训练…… 77
Module 10 复习训练 …… 79
全书听力专练…… 81
全书知识小结…… 83

## 8 开活页部分

月考卷一
Modules 1 ~ 3 过关检测卷 …… 85
期中检测卷 …… 89
月考卷二
Modules 6 ~ 8 过关检测卷 …… 93
期末检测卷 …… 97

参考答案及点拨…… 101



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

# 题有千变万化 我有妙法拆招

## ——本书题型解题方法示例

小学《典中点》英语再度全新升级，为大家带来了解题良方——解题的方法。有方法，解题快，不丢分！更多绝招请大家在书中寻找哦。



### 书面表达

### 综合能力题

阅读理解
完形填空
补全对话

八、阅读短文，选择正确答案。【关键词定位法】

It's Sunday morning.The sun is shining. We have no classes.We are playing in the park. Some girls are singing under a tree.Some boys are climbing the hill.Tom is drawing by the lake. Mike and John are playing chess.Sam is riding a bike.Where are Betty and Mary? They are sitting under a small tree.They are reading a picture book.We are happy.

( ) 1. What's the weather like on Sunday?
A.It's Sunday. B.It's fine.
C.It's raining.

**方法点拨：**此题用关键词定位法解答。

带着关键词和问题，从文中寻找答案。题1中由关键词weather可知是询问天气情况，从文中第二句可知天气很好。题2询问他们玩的地点，从文中第四句可知答案。题3根据关键信息climbing the hill 搜索答案。题4至题8根据问题中的人物，可以从文中搜索出答案。

### 句子题

改写句子
句子翻译
连词成句
句意填空

五、连词成句。【穿针引线法】

1. you I help can (?)【导学号9723228】

_____

**方法点拨：**此题用穿针引线法解答。

连词成句题先看标点。如：第1小题是问号，先找针尖（疑问词），再找针体（助动词/be动词/情态动词），然后是针鼻子（人称代词或人名），针尾（动词），最后是线（余下的部分）。如：第4小题是句号，那就是针鼻子（主语）后面的针尾带着一根线（动词+宾语+其他）。

### 词汇题

二、找出不同类的单词，将序号填入题前括号里。【分类记忆法】

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ( ) 1. | A.egg | B.tea | C.milk |
| ( ) 2. | A.cent | B.dollar | C.rice |
| ( ) 3. | A.chicken | B.beef | C.apple |
| ( ) 4. | A.cola | B.hot dog | C.bread |
| ( ) 5. | A.three | B.hamburger | C.twenty |

**方法点拨：**此题用分类记忆法解答。

此题考查单词的类别。我们可以将单词进行分类比较、归纳整理，使零乱的单词系统化，以突出其联系性、条理性、完整性。这五个小题分别考查了这五类单词：1.饮料类；2.货币类；3.肉类；4.食物类；5.数词类。通过分类排除，即可得出答案。

### 听力题

二、听录音，根据录音内容判断句子正（T）误（F）。【三步两遍听音法】

( ) 1. Hello，can I help you?
( ) 2. I want a hamburger and a cola, please.
( ) 3. I want a dog. How much is it?
( ) 4. It's eight dollars and twenty-five cents.
( ) 5. What do you want to eat?

**方法点拨：**此题用三步两遍听音法解答。

第一步：阅读题干，预估题意。第二步：听录音，捕捉关键信息。第三步：根据录音内容判断句子正误。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

# Module 1

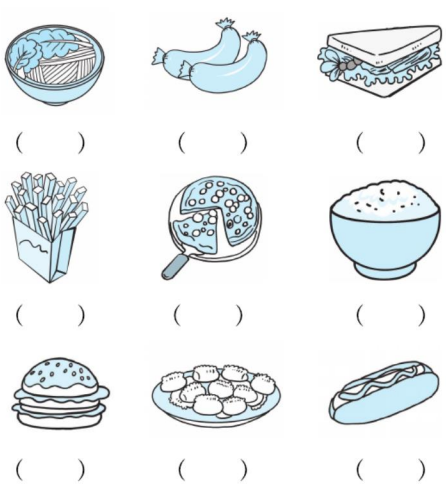
## Unit 1 I want a hot dog, please. ☞(答案见 103 页)

### 一、核心素养练

中西方饮食文化存在很大差异,中餐的烹饪方式丰富,有炒、蒸、煮、腌等,西餐则更多的是烘焙、煎等。你能区分下面哪些是中式快餐,哪些是西式快餐吗?

请你看图片,选出对应的单词,然后进行分类。(填序号)

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| A. rice | B. dumplings | C. hamburger |
| D. pizza | E. chips | F. noodles |
| G. sausages | H. hot dog | I. sandwich |



( ) ( ) ( )

( ) ( ) ( )

( ) ( ) ( )

1. Chinese food: _____

2. Western food: _____

### 二、找出不同类的单词,将序号填入题前括号里。

【分类记忆法】

( )1. A. egg B. tea C. milk

( )2. A. cent B. dollar C. rice

( )3. A. chicken B. beef C. apple

( )4. A. cola B. hot dog C. bread

( )5. A. three B. hamburger C. twenty

### 三、读一读,根据图片提示补全句子。

1.  2.  3. 


4. 

5.  6. 


1. —What do you want, Amy?

—I want a hamburger and a cup of _____.

2. That's my sister. She is a _____.

3. —Can I have a _____?

—Sure. Here you are.

4. —I want that new bag. How much is it?

—It's ten _____.

5. Be _____. Watch your step.

6. —How much is the pizza?

—It's four dollars and twenty-five _____.

### 四、单项选择。

( )1. I _____ some bread.

A. want B. wants C. want to

( )2. The hot dog _____ good.

A. look B. looks

C. look like

( )3. —_____ do you want?

—Noodles, please.

A. What B. When C. Why

( )4. —_____ is it?

—It's $10.00. 【导学号 9723228】

A. How many B. How long

C. How much

微信公众号 教辅资料站



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

(　　)5. It's one _____ and fifty _____.

A. dollars; cent　　B. dollars; cents

C. dollar; cents

(　　)6. —I want a hamburger.

—A hamburger _____ me _____.

A. of; too　　B. for; to

C. for; too

(　　)7. I want _____ fish and two _____.

A. an; colas　　B. some; colas

C. the; cola

## 五、连词成句。【穿针引线法】

1. you　I　help　can (?)　【导学号 9723228】

_____

2. much　is　how　the　hot dog (?)

_____

3. me　take　them　let (.)

_____

4. want　I　bread　some (.)

_____

5. twelve　book　this　dollars　is (.)

_____

6. do　what　want　you (?)

_____

## 六、选择恰当的句子完成对话。(只填序号)

**Cashier**: Hello. 1. _____

**Linda**: Yes, please.

**Cashier**: 2. _____

**Linda**: I want a hot dog and a hamburger.

**Cashier**: 3. _____

**Linda**: I want a cola. 4. _____

**Cashier**: It's thirteen dollars.

**Linda**: 5. _____

**Cashier**: Thank you. Enjoy your meal.

A. Can I help you?　　B. Here you are.

C. And to drink?　　D. What do you want?

E. How much is it?

## 七、阅读短文，完成任务。

Everyone wants to be healthy. Food is very important for our health. There is a lot of healthy food. We can eat more apples, bananas, oranges, tomatoes and potatoes. Because fruit and vegetables are good for us. But we shouldn't eat too much fast food. It's not healthy food. Healthy food can make us strong. Sports can also keep us healthy. Get up early and do some sports every day. We will be healthy and happy.

(一)短文中提到哪些食物是有益身体健康的？请在相应的图片下方打"√"。

1. 　(　　)

2. 　(　　)

3. 　(　　)

4. 

(　　)

5. 　(　　)

6. 　(　　)

7. 　(　　)

8. 　(　　)

9. 

(　　)

(二)根据短文内容，判断以下句子正(T)误(F)。

(　　)1. Food is not important for our health.

(　　)2. Hamburgers and hot dogs can make us strong.

(　　)3. Fruit and vegetables are good for our health.

(　　)4. Sports can also keep us healthy.

(　　)5. We should get up early and do some sports every day.

微信公众号 教辅资料站



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

# Unit 2 What do you want to eat? ☞(答案见104页)

## 一、根据句意及首字母提示补全单词。

1. —Can I h_____ you?
   —Yes. A cola, please.
2. I am thirsty. I want to d_____ some juice.
3. —What do you want to e_____?
   —I want some noodles.
4. —How much is the bag?
   —It's two d_____.
5. One dollar is one hundred c_____.

## 二、核心素养练

英语单词记忆的方法有很多,其中分类记忆法可以帮助我们记忆同类的单词。

请你仿照例子,也来写几个吧!(不少于三个)

例:职业类:cashier

farmer driver doctor

1. 饮料类:cola

   _____

2. 食物类:bread

   _____

3. 货币类:*yuan*

   _____

4. 数词类:one

   _____

5. 动物类:dog

   _____

## 三、读句子,用所给词的适当形式填空。

1. Can I help (your) _____?
2. He wants two (hamburger) _____.
3. I (want) _____ some fruit.
4. It's two (dollar) _____ and fifteen (cent) _____.
5. She (want) _____ to drink some milk.

## 四、单项选择。

( )1. —_____ do you want to _____?
—Green tea.
A. What; eat B. Where; drink
C. What; drink

( )2. I want to eat some _____.
A. meat B. hot dog C. hamburger

( )3. —How much is it?
—_____
A. There are eight.
B. They are five *yuan*.
C. It's eleven dollars.

( )4. I want a hot dog with _____ cheese.
A. lot B. lots C. lots of

( )5. _____ some chips.
A. There's B. Here's
C. Here're

## 五、核心素养练

英语学习的过程中思维方式的培养很重要,请你结合实际,分析下列情况如何点餐比较合适。大明带Sam,Amy和玲玲一起去开心小店吃午饭,他们每人只带了20元。请你看看下面的菜单,帮他们每人点一份合适的午餐吧!然后仿照例句写一写。

| Food | | Drink | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Hot dog | ¥4 | Apple juice | ¥6 |
| Hamburger | ¥5 | Orange juice | ¥4 |
| Noodles | ¥8 | Milk | ¥8 |
| Rice | ¥1 | Cola | ¥5 |
| Chicken | ¥10 | Green tea | ¥2 |
| Fish | ¥15 | Black tea | ¥3 |
| Vegetables | ¥12 | | |

微信公众号 教辅资料站



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

例：**Daming**：I want rice, fish and a cup of orange juice.

**Sam**：_____

**Amy**：_____

**Lingling**：_____

六、选出下列问句的正确答语，将序号填入题前括号里。

(　　)1. What's a hot dog?

(　　)2. Can I help you?

(　　)3. How much is it?

(　　)4. What do you want to eat?

(　　)5. What do you want to drink?

(　　)6. Is it really a dog?

A. Yes, please.
B. No, it isn't.
C. I want some juice.
D. I want to eat some noodles.
E. It's twenty *yuan*.
F. It's a kind of food.

七、根据图片提示，完成句子。

1. **Mum**：What do you want to eat?

**Sam**： $1. 00 /  $4. 00

_____ and  $8. 00/

 $2.00 _____, please.

2. **Mum**：And what do you want to drink?

**Sam**：I want 

$1. 50/ 

$2. 25

_____, please.

3. **Mum**：How much is it?

**Cashier**：It's _____.

4. **Mum**：Here you are.

**Cashier**：Thank you. _____ your meal!

八、阅读对话，根据对话内容选出下列人物所点的食物或饮料，在表格相应位置画“√”。

【圈画对应法】

**Waiter**：Good morning, sir! Can I help you?

**Mr Smith**：Yes, please. What do you want to eat, Sara?

**Sara**：I want a hot dog and French fries.

**Waiter**：Anything to drink?

**Sara**：A cola.

**Mr Smith**：Ben, what would you like?

**Ben**：I want some chicken and soup.

**Mr Smith**：OK.

**Waiter**：Is that all?

**Mr Smith**：Let me see. I'd like a hamburger and a cup of coffee. That's all. Thank you. How much is it?

**Waiter**：It's twenty-five dollars and thirty cents.

**Mr Smith**：Here you are.

**Waiter**：Thank you. Here's your change. Enjoy your meal.

| | Sara | Ben | Mr Smith |
|---|---|---|---|
| Hamburger | | | |
| Hot dog | | | |
| French fries | | | |
| Soup | | | |
| Coffee | | | |
| Cola | | | |
| Chicken | | | |

微信公众号 教辅资料站



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

# Module 1 能力过关练 ☞(答案见104页)

## 听说专练

一、听录音，根据录音内容给图片排序。听力训练





(　　)　(　　)　(　　)






(　　)　(　　)　(　　)

二、听录音，根据录音内容判断句子正（T）误（F）。【三步两遍听音法】

(　　)1. Hello, can I help you?

(　　)2. I want a hamburger and a cola, please.

(　　)3. I want a dog. How much is it?

(　　)4. It's eight dollars and twenty-five cents.

(　　)5. What do you want to eat?

三、听录音，选择合适的答语。

(　　)1. A. Yes, I do.　　B. No, I am not.
C. No, he doesn't.

(　　)2. A. I want a cola, please.
B. He wants an apple.
C. She wants a banana.

(　　)3. A. It's beautiful.　　B. It's sunny.
C. It's ten dollars.

(　　)4. A. Chicken, please.　B. Milk, please.
C. Eggs, please.

(　　)5. A. Yes, it is.
B. I want a hamburger.
C. I want some juice.

四、听录音，根据录音内容将下列对话补充完整。

**Cashier**: Good 1. _____, sir. Can I help you?

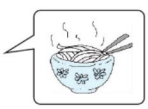
**Man**: I want 2. _____ hamburgers and a 3. _____, please. How much is it?

**Cashier**: It's 4. _____ dollars. Do you want some 5. _____?

**Man**: No, thank you. Here's the money.

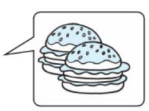
**Cashier**: Thank you. Here's your change.

五、看图片，仿照例子说句子。口语测评

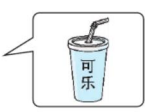
例：


(Lingling)

Lingling wants to eat some noodles.

1. 


(Sam)

2. 



(Amy)

六、仿照例子，看图问答。

例：　¥38

—What do you want to eat?
—I want to eat a pizza.
—How much is it?
—It's thirty-eight *yuan*.

1. 　¥12

2. 

¥1.5

微信公众号 教辅资料站



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

## 读写专练

七、阅读对话，根据上下文，选择恰当的单词并用其正确形式补全对话。【导学号 9723228】

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| how | here | can | want | much |
| cent | eat | drink | dollar | hamburger |

**A**：1. _____ I help you?

**B**：Yes. We 2. _____ to have dinner here.

**A**：What do you want to 3. _____?

**B**：We want two hot dogs and two 4. _____.

**A**：What do you want to 5. _____?

**B**：Two colas, please. 6. _____ 7. _____ is it?

**A**：It's fifteen 8. _____ and twenty 9. _____.

**B**：10. _____ you are.

**A**：Thank you.

八、阅读短文，根据短文内容填空。

People eat different things in different parts of the world. In the south of China, the main food is rice. People have rice every day. They eat it with meat, fish and vegetables. In Western countries, the most common food is bread and potatoes. They like fish and chips very much.

1. In the south of China, people eat _____ every day.
2. In the south of China, people eat rice with _____, _____ and _____.
3. In Western countries, people eat _____ and _____ in common.
4. In Western countries, people like _____ and _____ very much.

九、阅读对话，根据对话内容判断句子正（T）误（F）。

**Amy**：This Chinese restaurant looks good. Let's have lunch here.

**Sam**：OK. Let's go.

**Waiter**：Welcome to our restaurant! How many people, please?

**Amy**：Two.

**Waiter**：Oh, I see. This way, please. This is your table.

**Amy&Sam**：Thanks.

**Waiter**：Here's the menu.

**Amy**：I'd like some fish and noodles, please. How about you?

**Sam**：I'd like some dumplings and vegetables.

**Waiter**：OK. Wait a moment.

(　　)1. Amy and Sam will go to school.

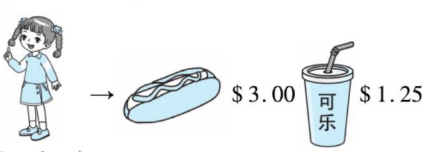
(　　)2. Amy and Sam want to have lunch.

(　　)3. This is a park.

(　　)4. Amy wants some fish and noodles.

(　　)5. Sam wants some hamburgers.

十、芳芳和玲玲正在快餐店点餐。请你根据下面提供的信息，写一段点餐并结账的小对话（至少 5 句话）。




(Fangfang)




(Lingling)

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

微信公众号 教辅资料站



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

# Module 2

## Unit 1 When are we going to eat? ☞(答案见104页)

### 一、核心素养练

英语时间的表达通常有两种:直接表达法和间接表达法。a quarter 表示 15 分钟,half 表示 30 分钟。

请你读一读,想一想,然后仿照例子,写出正确的时间。

例:nine ten　9:10

twenty to five　4:40

1. eleven o'clock _____
2. eight forty _____
3. twelve thirteen _____
4. half past seven _____
5. a quarter past ten _____
6. a quarter to seven _____

### 二、看图片,根据图片和首字母提示写单词,补全句子。

1. 
2. 
3. 
4. 
5. 

1. It's sunny today. Let's have a p_____.
2. There is a dark c_____ in the sky.
3. It's r_____ now.
4. Look, there are three d_____ on the pond.
5. It's twelve now. I am h_____. I am going to have l_____.

### 三、找出不同类的单词,将序号填入题前括号里。

(　　)1. A. breakfast　B. later　C. lunch
(　　)2. A. past　B. dry　C. wet
(　　)3. A. fish　B. beef　C. book
(　　)4. A. snow　B. cloud　C. twelve
(　　)5. A. drink　B. eat　C. hungry

### 四、单项选择。

(　　)1. —_____ are we going to eat?
—At half past six.
A. How　B. Where　C. When

(　　)2. —What time is it? —It's _____.
A. twelve　B. OK　C. a dog

(　　)3. There is a duck _____ the pond.
A. to　B. on　C. under

(　　)4. He _____ going to play football.
A. am　B. is　C. are

(　　)5. It's going to _____ soon.
A. rainy　B. rain　C. raining

### 五、根据图片,回答问题。

1. 
When are you going to get up?
_____

2. 
When are you going to have lunch?
_____

3. 
What is he going to do?
_____

4. 
Where is she going?
_____

5. 
What are they going to do?
_____



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

## 六、连词成句。

1. eat when we are to going (?)

_____

2. it is time what (?)

_____

3. have I to am breakfast going (.)

_____

4. there the clouds in are sky some (.)

_____

5. beautiful a day it is (.)

_____

6. twelve it's past half (.)

_____

## 七、选择恰当的句子，完成对话。（只填序号）

**Mum**: Hello, Linda. 1. _____. Do you want to go with me?

**Linda**: Sure. 2. _____

**Mum**: At nine o'clock. I am working now.

**Linda**: 3. _____

**Mum**: I am going to buy some fruit and vegetables. How about you?

**Linda**: 4. _____

**Mum**: OK.

**Linda**: It's nine o'clock. 5. _____

**Mum**: Great. Let's go.

A. What are you going to buy, Mum?
B. I am going to go shopping.
C. Let's go to the supermarket.
D. When are we going?
E. I am going to buy some milk.

## 八、阅读短文，完成任务。

My name is Amy. Today is Sunday. I am going to help my mum clean the room at nine in the morning. At half past nine, I am going to do my homework. My mum is going to buy some food in the supermarket. My dad is going to play basketball at the gym. At half past two in the afternoon, we are going to the park. I am going to ride my bike. My mum is going to dance with her friends. My dad is going to play chess. In the evening, we are going to watch TV together. We will have a good time.

（一）读短文，根据短文内容将人物与所做的事情连线。【抓关键短语法】

A.  B. 

C.  1.Amy D. 

2.Amy's mum

E.  3.Amy's dad F. 

G. 

H. 

（二）根据短文内容，判断下列句子正（T）误（F）。

(　　) 1. Amy is going to help her mum clean the room at ten in the morning.

(　　) 2. Amy's mum is going to buy some pens in the supermarket.

(　　) 3. They are going to the park in the afternoon.

(　　) 4. Amy's dad is going to play basketball in the park.

(　　) 5. They are going to watch TV in the evening.

微信公众号 教辅资料站



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

# Unit 2 It will snow in Harbin. ☞(答案见105页)

## 一、请你根据图表上的天气信息补全句子。

| 地点 | 天气情况 |
| --- | --- |
| 哈尔滨 |  |
| 天津 |  |
| 北京 |  |
| 南京 |  |
| 三亚 |  |

1. It will be _____ in Harbin.
2. It will be _____ in Tianjin.
3. It will _____ in Beijing.
4. It will _____ in Nanjing.
5. It will be _____ in Sanya.

## 二、核心素养练

英语单词构成的方法有很多,有些表示天气状况的形容词是由“天气类名词+y”构成的。

请你将下面的词变成形容词。

1. wind(风)→_____(刮风的)
2. cloud(云)→_____(多云的)
3. rain(雨)→_____(下雨的)
4. snow(雪)→_____(多雪的)
5. sun(太阳)→_____(晴朗的)
6. fog(雾)→_____(有雾的)

## 三、读句子,选词填空。

at in after to and

1. I am going to the park _____ play.
2. What are you going to do _____dinner?
3. It will be cold _____ windy in Xi'an.
4. Let's look _____ the weather tomorrow.
5. It will snow _____ Beijing.

## 四、单项选择。

( )1. It will _____ in Xi'an.
A. snow B. snowing C. be snow

( )2. It will _____ in Hangzhou.
A. sunny B. sun C. be sunny

( )3. It will be hot _____ Sanya.
A. in B. on C. at

( )4. It will be cold _____ Friday.
A. at B. on C. in

( )5. The boy is going to _____ computer games after dinner.
A. plays B. played C. play

( )6. —_____will it rain?
—Tomorrow.
A. Where B. When C. What

## 五、选出下列问句的正确答语,将序号填入题前括号里。

( )1. What time is it?
( )2. When are we going to eat for lunch?
( )3. What are you going to do today?
( )4. Where are we going?
( )5. What's the weather like today?
( )6. Is it hot today?

微信公众号 教辅资料站



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

A. It's windy.
B. We are going to the park.
C. We are going to have a picnic today.
D. It's eleven o'clock.
E. Yes, it is.
F. At half past twelve.

## 六、按要求完成句子。

1. Sam is going to play chess. (变为一般疑问句)

_____

2. We are going to eat lunch at twelve.
(对画线部分提问)

_____

3. It's eight o'clock now. (对画线部分提问)

_____

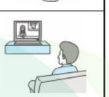
4. I am going to do my homework.
(对画线部分提问)

_____

5. will It be Wuhan cloudy in (.)
(连词成句)

_____

## 七、根据表格，写出下列城市明天的天气情况，以及人物的计划。

| Name | City | Weather | Activity |
|---|---|---|---|
| He Lin | Beijing |  |  |
| Li Wei | Wuhan |  |  |
| Wu Jun | Hangzhou |  |  |
| Hu Bin | Tianjin |  |  |
| Ding Shan | Yunnan |  |  |

例：**He Lin**：It will snow in Beijing. I am going to skate.

1. **Li Wei**：_____

2. **Wu Jun**：_____

3. **Hu Bin**：_____

4. **Ding Shan**：_____

## 八、阅读对话，完成任务。

**Jim**：Hi, Kate! What's the weather like in Shanghai today?

**Kate**：Hi, Jim! It's sunny and warm here. I am going to the zoo this afternoon.

**Jim**：Sounds good.

**Kate**：Jim, how's the weather in Beijing now?

**Jim**：It's cloudy. It's going to rain. So I can't fly a kite in the park.

**Kate**：Oh, I see.

**Jim**：Do you know the weather in Guangdong?

**Kate**：It's too hot. The children there usually go swimming in the river.

**Jim**：I like swimming, too. But I can't swim now. It's cold here.

(一)根据对话内容，判断下列句子正(T)误(F)。

(　　)1. Kate is in Beijing.

(　　)2. Kate is going to the zoo this afternoon.

(　　)3. Jim is in Guangdong.

(　　)4. Jim is going to swim in the river.

(　　)5. It's going to rain in Beijing.

(二)根据对话内容，写出下列城市的天气情况。

1. It's _____ and _____ in Beijing.

2. It's _____ and _____ in Shanghai.

3. It's _____ in Guangdong.

微信公众号 教辅资料站



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

# Module 2 能力过关练 ☞(答案见105页)

## 听说专练

听力训练

一、听录音，判断下列图片与录音内容是（T）否（F）一致。

1.  2. 

(　　)　　(　　)

3.  4.  5. 

(　　)　　(　　)　　(　　)

二、听录音，根据录音内容将时间与活动连线。

【三步两遍听音法】

1.  2.  3.  4. 

A　　B　　C　　D

三、听录音，选择合适的答语。

(　　)1. A. I am going to get up.
B. He's going to have lunch.
C. She's going to read books.

(　　)2. A. At five o'clock.　B. It's half past five.
C. There are six.

(　　)3. A. It's a beautiful day.
B. It is sunny in Shanghai.
C. It's ten dollars.

(　　)4. A. We are going to have a picnic.
B. It's going to rain.
C. At eight o'clock.

(　　)5. A. Yes, it will.　B. Yes, she is.
C. He is going to the park.

四、听录音，根据录音内容将句子补充完整。

Let's look at the weather tomorrow. It will be 1. _____ in Harbin. It will 2. _____ in Guangzhou. It will be 3. _____ in Beijing. It will be 4. _____ in Xi'an. It will be 5. _____ in Shanghai.

五、看图片，仿照例子说句子。

口语测评

例：6:30 

It's half past six. I am going to get up.

1. 7:30 

2. 10:00 

六、仿照例子，看图说一说。

例：Tianjin 

It will rain in Tianjin.

1. Wuhan 

2. Beijing 

3. Harbin 

微信公众号 教辅资料站



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

## 读写专练

七、阅读短文，选择恰当的单词填空。

On Sundays, we are going to the 1. _____ near our school. There are many 2. _____ in it—tigers, elephants, pandas and monkeys. The 3. _____ are very big. They all have long noses. Their noses can 4. _____ them eat and drink. Many people like 5. _____. They are rare(稀有的) animals of China. But I like monkeys best. We like going to the zoo.

( )1. A. park B. school C. zoo

( )2. A. people B. children C. animals

( )3. A. elephants B. tigers C. pandas

( )4. A. buy B. help C. look

( )5. A. elephants B. pandas C. monkeys

八、阅读短文，选择正确的答案。

Tomorrow is Sunday. It will be sunny and warm. Lingling is going to visit her grandparents in the morning. She is going to have lunch with her grandparents. She is going to fly kites with her cousins after lunch. She is going home in the evening. She is going to read English at eight o'clock and go to bed at half past eight.

( )1. Tomorrow is _____.

A. Friday B. Saturday C. Sunday

( )2. It will be _____ and warm tomorrow.

A. windy B. cloudy C. sunny

( )3. Lingling is going to _____ on Sunday morning.

A. visit her grandparents

B. read English

C. fly kites

( )4. Lingling is going to fly kites with her _____.

A. friends B. cousins C. grandparents

( )5. Lingling is going to bed at _____.

A. 8:00 B. 8:30 C. 9:00

九、阅读短文，根据短文内容判断句子正（T）误（F）。

China is a big country. So the weather in the south is quite different from that in the north.

In Shanghai, we have warm and wet spring, hot summer, cool autumn and cold winter. But in some parts of China, such as Hainan, Guangdong and Yunnan, it is always warm and hot. People maybe never see snow there. In winter, a lot of visitors come to Hainan and enjoy the sunshine on the beach. But some people like cold weather. In the north of China, children can make snowmen and play with snowballs. It is fun to play outside when it is snowing.

( )1. In China, the weather in the south is the same as that in the north.

( )2. In Shanghai, it's warm and wet in spring.

( )3. People in Guangdong can often see snow in winter.

( )4. Children can make snowmen in Hainan in winter.

( )5. In winter, it is sunny and hot in the north of China.

十、这个周末将会是晴天，请你以“My plan for the weekend”为题，写一写你的周末计划（至少五句话）。

**My plan for the weekend**

It will be sunny on the weekend. On Saturday morning, I am going to _____

_____

_____

微信公众号 教辅资料站



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

# Module 3

## Unit 1 The sun is shining. ☞(答案见106页)

一、根据字母提示写出单词，然后将单词与图片连线。

1. t o o p h _____

2. r w t e i _____

3. e r e y o v n e _____

4. r c y _____

5. i n s e h _____

A. 

B. 

C. 

D. 

E. 

二、找出不同类的单词，将序号填入题前括号里。 【导学号 9723228】

( )1. A. interesting B. hungry C. picnic

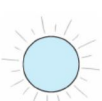
( )2. A. write B. photo C. send

( )3. A. sun B. tree C. sing

( )4. A. eat B. in C. on

( )5. A. drinking B. eating C. shine

三、读一读，根据图片提示，补全句子。

1.  2.  3. 

4.  5.  6. 

1. Look! The girl is _____.

2. The _____ is shining in the sky.

3. The bird is _____.

4. The girl is _____ a letter to her friend.

5. He is _____ an apple.

6. We are _____ a picnic.

四、单项选择。

( )1. Look _____ the girl over there.
A. in B. on C. at

( )2. I visit my uncle _____ Sunday.
A. of B. on C. in

( )3. They _____ having an English lesson.
A. am B. is C. are

( )4. The birds are singing _____ the tree.
A. in B. on C. at

( )5. It's starting _____.
A. rainy B. to rain C. to raining

( )6. The duck is _____ our sandwiches.
A. eat B. eats C. eating

五、连词成句。

1. shining is the sun (.)
_____

2. are flying birds away the (.)
_____

3. some I am you sending photos (.)
_____

4. miss I in China everyone (.)
_____

5. at the look little dog (.)
_____

微信公众号 教辅资料站



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

6. hamburgers ducks eating are the our (.)

_____

## 六、核心素养练

我们要具备观察图片的能力，并学会运用现在进行时描述图片中的情景。

请你给下列图片选择合适的句子。

1.  (　　)

2.  (　　)

3.  (　　)

4.  (　　)

5.  (　　)

6.  (　　)

A. Pingping is singing a song.
B. Sam is sending an email to his cousin.
C. We are drawing pictures.
D. In the photo, the sun is shining. We are looking at the ducks.
E. I am playing basketball with Mike.
F. They are swimming in the river.

## 七、选词填空，补全对话。(只填序号)

A. had　B. was　C. in　D. at
E. rain　F. were　G. wasn't

**A**: Look 1. _____ this photo.
**B**: Where were you in the photo?
**A**: We 2. _____ in the park.
**B**: What did you do there?
**A**: We 3. _____ a picnic.
**B**: Was it interesting?
**A**: No, it 4. _____.
**B**: Why?
**A**: It 5. _____ sunny 6. _____ the morning. But it started to 7. _____ in the afternoon. So we couldn't go on.
**B**: What a bad day!

## 八、阅读短文，完成任务。

Today is Saturday. The sun is shining. We don't go to school. We are in the park now. The park is big and beautiful. There are many trees and flowers in it. There is a river and a hill in it too.

Some girls are under a big tree. They are singing and dancing. Peter and Sam are sitting beside the river. They are drawing. Mike is there too. He is looking at the fish in the river. Look! There is a banana in Rose's hand. She is eating it.

(一)阅读短文，根据短文内容填空。

1. Today is _____. 【导学号 9723228】
2. We are in the _____ now.
3. The park is _____ and _____.
4. There are many _____ and _____ in the park.
5. There is a _____ and a _____ in the park.

(二)根据短文内容，判断以下句子正(T)误(F)。

(　　)1. We go to school today.
(　　)2. The girls are singing and dancing.
(　　)3. Mike is swimming in the river.
(　　)4. Peter and Sam are playing chess beside the river.
(　　)5. Rose is eating an apple.

微信公众号 教辅资料站



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

# Unit 2 The cows are drinking water.

☞(答案见 106 页)

## 一、选出下列动词对应的-ing 形式。

( )1. shine A. shining B. shineing
( )2. clean A. cleaning B. cleanning
( )3. swim A. swiming B. swimming
( )4. jump A. jumping B. jumpping
( )5. sing A. singing B. sining
( )6. have A. haveing B. having
( )7. make A. making B. makeing
( )8. run A. runing B. running
( )9. dance A. dancing B. danceing
( )10. read A. reading B. readding

## 二、核心素养练

了解单词的词性和构成,并会对单词分析归类是我们英语学习中要具备的一种能力。

请你读下列单词,然后写出一个同类词。

1. shine sing fly _____
2. everyone football classroom _____
3. wrong right good _____
4. black green yellow _____
5. train bus plane _____
6. jumping crying drinking _____
7. tree river wind _____
8. on at under _____

## 三、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

1. The ducks are (eat) _____ our food!
2. The birds are(sing) _____ in the trees.
3. The sun is (shine) _____.
4. We are(look) _____ at some ducks.
5. I am (send) _____ some cards.

## 四、给下列汉语句子选择合适的翻译。

( )1. 明天将会有风。
( )2. 我们来看一下明天的天气。
( )3. 今晚不会下雪。
( )4. 青岛将会很冷。
( )5. 周三将会很暖和。

A. It will be cold in Qingdao.
B. Let's look at the weather tomorrow.
C. It will be warm on Wednesday.
D. It will be windy tomorrow.
E. It won't snow tonight.

## 五、单项选择。

( )1. Look! The bees _____ in the flowers.
A. dance B. dancing C. are dancing

( )2. —_____ is Mike doing?
—He's sweeping the floor.
A. Where B. Whose C. What

( )3. The children are _____ a lovely time.
A. has B. have C. having

( )4. Don't look out _____ the window. It's dangerous.
A. at B. of C. in

( )5. The boys and girls are _____ the running race in the playground.
A. looking B. watching C. seeing

( )6. I'm _____ the train now.
A. at B. on C. of

## 六、请你根据图片,补全句子。

1. In this photo, the _____ is blowing. The children are _____ _____.





关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

2. In this photo, the rabbit _____ _____ a carrot.



3. In this photo, the cows _____ _____ _____.



4. In this photo, the duck is _____.



## 七、句型转换。

1. They are doing housework. (改成一般疑问句)

_____ they _____ housework?

2. Are the students cleaning the classroom? (作肯定和否定回答)

Yes, _____ _____.

No, _____ _____.

3. I'm playing football in the playground. (对画线部分进行提问)

_____ _____ you _____ football?

4. Tom is reading books in his study. (对画线部分进行提问)

_____ _____ Tom _____ in his study?

5. The child is playing in the park. (改为复数句)

The _____ _____ _____ in the park.

## 八、阅读短文，选择正确答案。【关键词定位法】

It's Sunday morning. The sun is shining. We have no classes. We are playing in the park. Some girls are singing under a tree. Some boys are climbing the hill. Tom is drawing by the lake. Mike and John are playing chess. Sam is riding a bike. Where are Betty and Mary? They are sitting under a small tree. They are reading a picture book. We are happy.

( )1. What's the weather like on Sunday?

A. It's Sunday. B. It's fine.

C. It's raining.

( )2. Where are they playing?

【导学号 9723228】

A. In the park.

B. On the pond.

C. On the farm.

( )3. Who is climbing the hill?

A. Some girls. B. Some boys.

C. Some teachers.

( )4. What is Tom doing?

A. He is singing.

B. He is riding a bike.

C. He is drawing.

( )5. What are Mike and John doing?

A. They are swimming.

B. They are climbing the hill.

C. They are playing chess.

( )6. What is Sam doing?

A. He is riding a bike.

B. He is running.

C. He is walking.

( )7. Where are Betty and Mary?

A. They are in the tree.

B. They are under the tree.

C. They are in the lake.

( )8. What are Betty and Mary doing?

A. They are reading a picture book.

B. They are dancing.

C. They are playing games.



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

# Module 3 能力过关练 ☞(答案见106页)

## 听说专练

一、听录音，选出你所听到的单词。

听力训练

( )1. A. sun B. hungry C. sunny

( )2. A. eating B. shining C. singing

( )3. A. picture B. park C. photo

( )4. A. station B. hill C. shop

( )5. A. right B. night C. light

二、听录音，根据录音内容给图片排序。

【听关键词法】





( ) ( ) ( )




( ) ( )

三、听录音，选择合适的答语。

( )1. A. I am jumping. B. Thank you. C. He is jumping.

( )2. A. I am reading. B. He made a paper plane. C. I wrote a letter to my penfriend.

( )3. A. I am drawing a picture. B. I drew a picture. C. I like drawing pictures.

( )4. A. He is in the park. B. I am on the train. C. I am eating dinner.

( )5. A. Yes, he is. B. Yes, we are. C. Yes, they are.

四、听录音，根据录音内容将句子补充完整。

These are photos of my friends. Look at the first one. This is Ann. She is 1. _____. Look at the second one. This is John. He is 2. _____. The girl in the photo is Chen Jie. She is 3. _____. In this photo, Jack is 4. _____. And look at the last one. They are Lucy and Lily. They are 5. _____.

五、看图片，仿照例子说句子。

口语测评

例：

(bird; sing)

The bird is singing.

1. 

(cow; eat)

2. 

(fish; swim)

3. 

(rabbit; jump)

4. 

(ducks; walk)

5. 

(elephants; drink)

## 读写专练

六、选词并用其正确形式填空，补全对话。

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| have | look | run | park | what |
| do | duck | happy | swim | on |

A: What 1. _____ you do last weekend?

B: We 2. _____ a picnic in a 3. _____.

A: Really?



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

**B**: Yes. 4. _____ at the photo. The sun is shining. The dogs are 5. _____.

**A**: 6. _____ are those?

**B**: They are 7. _____.

**A**: Where are they 8. _____?

**B**: They are 9. _____ the pond.

**A**: Are they 10. _____?

**B**: Yes. But they look hungry.

## 七、阅读短文，回答问题。

It's summer in Australia. It's a beautiful sunny day. There are many people on vacation(度假). Some people are taking photos. Some people are lying(躺) on the beach. A few young people are playing beach volleyball(沙滩排球). Many children are playing in the water. A group of people are swimming in the sea. This is a very interesting place. Everyone is having a good time.

1. What's the weather like?

_____

2. Where are the people?

_____

3. Who is playing beach volleyball?

_____

4. What are the children doing?

_____

5. Are they happy?

_____

## 八、阅读短文，选择正确的答案。

【导学号 9723228】

It's half past seven in the morning. The telephone rings and Mary goes to answer it.

"Hello. Who's that?" She asks.

"It's me, Peter." Peter is a friend of Mary's eight-year-old brother John.

"Oh! Hello, Peter. What do you want?" says Mary.

"Can I speak to John?" says Peter.

"No," says Mary. "You can't speak to him now. He's getting ready for school. He's eating his breakfast. Grandmother is combing(梳) his hair. Father is under the table, putting his shoes on. Mother is getting his books and putting them in his school bag. Goodbye. I have to go now. I have to open the door. The school bus is coming."

(　　)1. How old is John?

A. Seven.　B. Eight.　C. We don't know.

(　　)2. What is John doing?

A. He's putting his shoes on.

B. He's speaking to Peter.

C. He's having breakfast.

(　　)3. Who's combing John's hair?

A. Mary.　B. Mother.　C. Grandmother.

(　　)4. How do John and Mary go to school?

A. On foot.　　B. By bus.

C. By bike.

## 九、请你仔细观察下面的图片，然后以"My classmates"为题，写一写同学们下课时正在干什么(至少五句话)。





**My classmates**

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

# Module 4

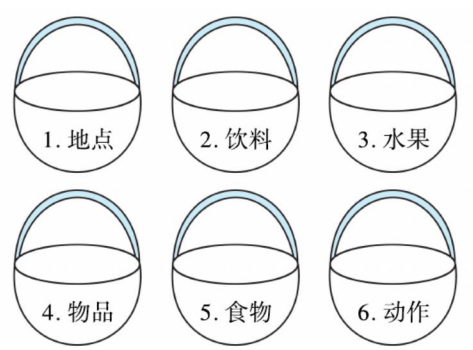
## Unit 1 The balloons are flying away! ☞(答案见 107 页)

### 一、核心素养练

辨析词义,并能将单词正确归类,有助于提高我们的学习效率。

请你将下列单词分类,并将序号填入篮子里。

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| A. supermarket | B. banana | C. milk | D. apple |
| E. say | F. cola | G. ball | H. buy |
| I. rice | J. park | K. help | L. pear |
| M. box | N. station | O. cake | P. tea |
| Q. kite | R. hamburger | | |




### 二、核心素养练

观察能力能帮助我们发现关键信息。

同学们,你们能根据图片和首字母提示写出句子中的单词吗?

1. 
2. 
3. 
4. 
5. 
6. 

1. The b_____ are flying away.
2. Mum is b_____ some fruit at the supermarket.
3. Look! He can c_____ the big boxes.
4. There are some a_____ on the tree.
5. He is on the p_____.
6. The o_____ are falling.

### 三、读句子,选词填空。

on away at for to

1. Happy birthday _____ you!
2. Look _____ Sam. He's running.
3. Lucy is _____ the phone.
4. My mother is making cakes _____ me.
5. Her kite is flying _____.

### 四、单项选择。

( )1. —What do you like?
—We like _____.
A. apple B. hamburger C. tea

( )2. —Am I going to have a birthday party?
—Yes, _____.
A. I'm B. you are C. I am

( )3. Who can help _____?
A. I B. me C. my

( )4. Mum can't _____ everything.
A. carry B. carries C. carrying

( )5. She's buying things _____ your birthday.
A. for B. in C. at

( )6. They _____, "Happy Birthday, Daming!"
A. talk B. say C. speak



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

## 五、仿照例子，写句子。

例：

（oranges，fall）

The oranges are falling.

1. 

（balloon，fly away）

_____

2. 

（sister，on the phone）

_____

3. 

（books，fall ）

_____

## 六、读句子，选择对应的答语。

（　　）1. Are you going to have a birthday party?

（　　）2. Where's your mum?

（　　）3. Who can help me?

（　　）4. What's he doing?

（　　）5. Happy birthday，Daming.

A. Thank you.
B. I can help you.
C. She's at the supermarket.
D. He is carrying a box.
E. Yes，I am.

## 七、阅读短文，根据短文内容，判断对（T）错（F）。

Today is March the ninth. It's Helen's birthday. She is twelve. All her friends are at her home. They bring a lot of things for her birthday.

**Lingling**：Happy birthday，Helen! This is for you.

**Helen**：Thank you. What's this?

**Lingling**：It's a picture book.

**Helen**：Wow，it's about animals. I like it.

**Lingling**：Oh. Where is Tim?

**Helen**：He's sitting on the sofa. He is listening to music there.

**Lingling**：Look! Amy is coming. She brings a big birthday cake.

**Helen**：I see.

**Amy**：Happy birthday! Mum bought a nice birthday cake for you.

**Helen**：Thank you.

**Amy**：Is Linda here?

**Helen**：Yes. She's in the kitchen. She brings some chicken. Oh，Miss Li is coming too.

**Miss Li**：Happy birthday，Helen! There is a notebook for you.

**Helen**：How nice! Thank you.

**Miss Li**：Boys and girls，It's time to have the cake. Let's sing the birthday song together.

**All**：Great!

**Helen**：Thank you. Let's cut the birthday cake. Who can help me?

**Miss Li**：Let me help you.

（　　）1. Helen's birthday is on March 9.

（　　）2. Lingling gives a doll to Helen.

（　　）3. Amy is listening to music.

（　　）4. Miss Li buys a notebook for Helen.

（　　）5. Tim can help Helen to cut the cake.

（　　）6. There are four friends at Helen's home.



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

# Unit 2 The apples are falling down the stairs.

☞(答案见107页)

## 一、将短语与对应的图片连线。

1. get on the bus
2. get off the bus
3. drive the bus

A. 

B. 

C. 

## 二、根据图片及字母提示补全句子。

1. 

There are some _____ in the basket. (s,g,e,g)

2. 

The chair is _____. (o,k,e,b,n,r)

3. 

The _____ is eating bamboo. (a,d,a,n,p)

4. 

What a _____! (s,m,e,s)

5. 

The man is going up the _____. (a,i,s,r,t,s)

## 三、读句子，用所给词的适当形式填空。

1. Can you help (I) _____?
2. Today is (Daming) _____ birthday.
3. Where is (you) _____ mum?
4. There are some (balloon) _____ in the sky.
5. I am (try) _____ to drive the bus.

## 四、单项选择。

(　　)1. The eggs _____ falling too.
A. am　　B. is　　C. are

(　　)2. I am sorry. I can't carry _____ all.
A. they　　B. them　　C. this

(　　)3. Look! A panda kite _____ falling.
A. are　　B. is　　C. am

(　　)4. The _____ are broken.
A. pear　　B. desk　　C. desks

(　　)5. He's trying _____ on the bus.
A. get　　B. to get　　C. got

## 五、核心素养练

我们在使用英语时，要根据正确的情境，使用恰当而得体的句子。

请大家读一读，选出正确的句子。

(　　)1. 当你向他人寻求帮助时，你应该说：
A. Can I help you?
B. Who can help me?
C. Be careful.

(　　)2. 当你有事情打扰别人时，应该说：
A. Hello.　　B. Excuse me.
C. After you.

(　　)3. 当你走进房间，发现里面很乱时，你可以说：
A. What a big house!
B. This way, please.
C. What a mess!

(　　)4. 老师走进教室，发现里面很吵时，老师应该说：
A. Be careful!　　B. Be quiet, please.
C. Please sit down.



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

( )5. 你不能为别人提供帮助时,你应该说:

A. Sorry, I can't. B. Here you are.

C. Help!

( )6. 你搬不动这些书时,你可以说:

A. I can carry the books.

B. I can't carry the books.

C. Can you carry the books?

## 六、选出下列问句的正确答语,将序号填入题前括号里。

( )1. What's he doing now?

( )2. Can I help you?

( )3. Where is the book?

( )4. Are you helpful?

( )5. What is she doing?

A. Yes, please.
B. Yes, I am.
C. It's on the floor.
D. She's doing her homework.
E. He is carrying the desk.

## 七、读一读,仿照例子写句子。

例:She walks to school.

She is walking to school.

1. The balloon flies away.

_____

2. The apples fall down the stairs.

_____

## 八、按要求完成句子。

1. The paper is flying away. Can you help me? (作肯定回答)

_____

2. Daming can help you. (对画线部分提问)

_____

3. My mum is at home. (对画线部分提问)

_____

4. The pigs are sleeping under the tree. (对画线部分提问)

_____

5. I am going to have a birthday party. (改为一般疑问句)

_____

## 九、阅读短文,选择正确的答案,将其序号填入题前括号里。

Look at the man. What is he doing? He's carrying a very big box. The box is full of apples. He wants to put it on the back of his bike and take it home. Can he do that? No, I don't think so. Why not? Because the box is full and too heavy. Look! What's wrong? He drops the box. Poor man!

( )1. The man is _____.

A. riding a bike B. carrying a box

C. eating apples

( )2. —What's in the box?

—_____

A. Some apples. B. Some books.

C. Some oranges.

( )3. Can the man put the box on the back of his bike?

A. Yes, he can. B. No, he can't.

C. No, he doesn't.

( )4. Is the box heavy or light?

A. It's light. B. It's heavy.

C. Yes, it is.

( )5. What happens at last?

A. The man takes the box home.

B. The man falls down.

C. The man drops the box.



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

# Module 4 能力过关练 ☞(答案见107页)

## 听说专练

一、听录音，根据录音内容给单词排序。 听力训练

1. miss　　mess　　dance
(　　)　　(　　)　　(　　)

2. fall　　tall　　ball
(　　)　　(　　)　　(　　)

3. buy　　fly　　cry
(　　)　　(　　)　　(　　)

4. something　　everything　　nothing
(　　)　　(　　)　　(　　)

5. balloon　　banana　　bird
(　　)　　(　　)　　(　　)

二、听录音，根据录音内容给图片排序。





(　　)　　(　　)　　(　　)





(　　)　　(　　)　　(　　)

三、听录音，根据录音内容连线。

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. Tom | A. carry a box |
| 2. Simon | B. play the piano |
| 3. Peter | C. eat a hamburger |
| 4. Ann | D. have a birthday party |
| 5. Lucy | E. fall down the stairs |

四、听录音，根据录音内容判断句子正（T）误（F）。

(　　)1. Sam is from the US.
(　　)2. Sam is in Beijing with his family.
(　　)3. Sam has got a pet dog.
(　　)4. Amy is going to have a birthday party.
(　　)5. Mum is making a card for Amy.

五、看图片，仿照例子说句子。 口语测评

例：

(kite, fly away)
The kite is flying away.

1. 

(two boys, fall down the bike)

2. 

(my father, carry the boxes)

3. 

(pears, fall)

4. 

(my mother, buy things)

5. 

(animals, have a birthday party)

六、朗读短文，读一读他们正在做什么。

Today is my sister's birthday. My mum is buying things at the supermarket. My dad is cleaning the room. My aunt can make birthday cakes. She is making a big birthday cake. My brother can draw pictures. He is making a birthday card. I am playing the piano. My sister is singing. We are happy.



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

## 读写专练

七、选择合适的句子，补全对话。

**Amy**：It's raining. But I can't find my umbrella.

1. _____

**Mum**：Sorry, I can't. 2. _____

**Amy**：Can you help me, Dad?

**Dad**：3. _____ I am watering the flowers.

**Amy**：4. _____

**Grandma**：I can help you. Look, Amy. It's under the desk.

**Amy**：5. _____

**Grandma**：It's my pleasure.

A. Sorry, I can't.
B. Thank you, Grandma.
C. Can you help me, Mum?
D. Who can help me?
E. I'm cleaning the room.

八、阅读短文，根据短文内容选择正确答案。

Tomorrow is Amy's birthday. Her father is making a cake and her mother is buying a present for her. Daming is making a birthday card for Amy. Lingling is buying balloons. They are very beautiful. Amy is going to have a birthday party with her friends tomorrow. She's very happy.

( )1. When is Amy's birthday?
A. Today. B. This Sunday.
C. Tomorrow.

( )2. Who is making a cake?
A. Amy. B. Amy's mother.
C. Amy's father.

( )3. Who is making the birthday card?
A. Lingling. B. Daming. C. Amy.

( )4. What is Lingling doing?
A. She is making a birthday card.
B. She is buying a present.
C. She is buying balloons.

( )5. They are going to _____ tomorrow.
A. have a birthday party
B. have a picnic
C. have dinner

九、阅读短文，根据短文内容判断句子正（T）误（F）。

**A Clever Crow**

A crow is thirsty. He finds a bottle with a little water in it. But the neck of the bottle is too long. The crow can't get the water. The crow thinks and thinks, and then he has a good idea. He puts some pebbles into the bottle, and the water rises. Now he can drink the water. What a clever crow!

( )1. The crow wants to drink water.

( )2. There isn't any water in the bottle.

( )3. The bottle's neck is too long, so the crow can't get the water.

( )4. The crow drinks the water at last.

( )5. The crow is very clever.

十、星期天，红红一家都正在干什么呢？请你仔细观察下面的图片，用英语写一段话（至少五句话）。

提示词：wash the apples, work on a computer, fall down the table, pick up the books



It's Sunday _____

_____

_____



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

# Module 5

## Unit 1 He is playing the *suona*, but the phone rings. ☞(答案见 108 页)

### 一、核心素养练

记忆单词有很多方法,比如同类词记忆法、反义词记忆法、相近词记忆法等。

请你读一读下面的句子,写出句中画线单词的反义词或对应词。【反义词记忆法】

1. It's very cold. _____
2. "Stop!" says Simon. _____
3. Come in, please. _____
4. They all laugh. _____
5. I heard it somewhere very quietly. _____
6. He is sitting down. _____

### 二、看图片,读句子,根据图意填单词。

1. 
2. 
3. 
4. 
5. 
6. 

1. Fangfang is having a birthday _____.
2. The girl is _____.
3. Look! The _____ is ringing.
4. The boy is _____ the *suona* now.
5. The dog is _____ loudly.
6. The sign says "_____".

### 三、选出不同类的一项。

( )1. A. bell B. bread C. clock
( )2. A. come B. walk C. time
( )3. A. *suona* B. *erhu* C. baseball
( )4. A. zoo B. hospital C. stop
( )5. A. happy B. phone C. TV

### 四、单项选择。

( )1. She is eating dinner, _____ the phone rings.
A. or B. but C. so

( )2. He stops and everyone _____.
A. wait B. go C. waits

( )3. The girl is crying very _____.
A. loudly B. loudest C. louder

( )4. Sam is playing the piano for the _____.
A. one time B. two time C. third time

( )5. I can't play _____ basketball.
A. a B. an C. /

( )6. He is crossing the street, _____ a car _____.
A. but; coming B. so; come
C. but; comes

( )7. She is _____ to her friend, but the phone _____.
A. talk; ring B. talking; rings
C. talking; ringing

( )8. She is doing the homework, but the boy _____.
A. play a flute B. play flute
C. plays the flute

### 五、读句子,选词填空。

1. —_____(What/Where) are they doing?
—They are singing and dancing.



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

2. Daming is playing _____ (the/a) *suona*.

3. She came to my home for the _____ (one/first) time.

4. My mother can't _____ (listen/hear) me.

5. Simon's dog _____ (come/comes) in.

6. I'm watching TV, but the bell _____ (rings/ring).

7. "Let's begin!" I _____ (say/says).

## 六、情景选择。

( )1. 你想知道他们正在干什么,可以问:

A. What are they doing?

B. What do they do?

( )2. 门铃响了,你打开门,会对客人说:

A. What's wrong?

B. Come in, please.

( )3. 电话响了,你接电话时,应该说:

A. Hello! I am Mike. Who are you?

B. Hello! This is Mike. Who's that?

( )4. 你正在做作业,电话突然响了,你会说:

A. I am doing my homework, but the phone rings.

B. I am doing my homework, so the phone rings.

## 七、连词成句。

1. is Jim *suona* the playing (.)

_____

2. singing he but bell rings is the (,.)

_____

3. dog loudly starts bark to the (.)

_____

4. stop waits I and everyone (.)

_____

5. can't him his hear friend (.)

_____

## 八、阅读短文,完成任务。

Look! The children are having a birthday party for Linda. Sarah is singing and Tina is dancing with Mary. Li Ming is playing the piano, but the bell rings. So he stops and everyone waits. Linda opens the door. More friends come in. They buy a new schoolbag for Linda. Now they are singing "Happy Birthday!" to Linda together. They are happy today.

(一)根据短文内容,将人物与其对应的图片连线。

1. Sarah
2. Tina
3. Mary
4. Li Ming
5. Linda
6. Linda's friends

A. 

B. 

C. 

D. 

E. 

(二)根据短文内容,判断以下句子正(T)误(F)。

( )1. The children are having a birthday party for Mary.

( )2. Mary is dancing with Tina.

( )3. Li Ming is playing the flute.

( )4. Linda's friends buy a new schoolbag for her.

( )5. They are singing "Happy Birthday!" to Linda together.



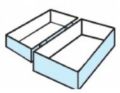
关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

# Unit 2 He's riding his bike, but it starts to rain.

☞(答案见 108 页)

## 一、根据图片及字母提示补全句子。

1. There is _____ in the box. (t,h,n,i,o,n,g)



2. He sang this song for the third _____. (i,e,t,m)




3. The dog is _____ the piano. (y,a,l,p,g,i,n)



4. Look! The baby is crying _____. (l,l,d,u,o,y)



5. The weather _____ too hot. (e,s,g,t)



## 二、按要求写出单词。

1. loud (副词) _____
2. rain (形容词) _____
3. start(单三形式) _____
4. he(宾格形式) _____
5. us (主格形式) _____
6. ring(单三形式) _____
7. walk(-ing 形式) _____
8. ride(-ing 形式) _____

## 三、核心素养练

英语单词中的合成词可以运用加法进行记忆,请你仿照例子写一写吧!

例:no + thing = nothing(没有什么)

1. after + noon = _____(　　)
2. every + one = _____(　　)
3. foot + ball = _____(　　)
4. _____ + _____ = _____(　　)
5. _____ + _____ = _____(　　)

## 四、单项选择。

(　　)1. Sam is _____football,but it _____ to rain.

A. plays;starting　B. playing;starts

C. playing;starting

(　　)2. Lingling is _____exercise,but it _____too hot.

A. doing;get　B. does;getting

C. doing;gets

(　　)3. It's time to go to bed,_____ Tom is still watching TV.

A. or　B. but　C. and

(　　)4. He is _____in the park,but it starts to _____.

A. walks;snow　B. walking;snowy

C. walking;snow

(　　)5. Sam is _____ music. Little Tom is crying,but Sam knows _____.

A. listening to;nothing

B. listen;nothing

C. listening;everything

## 五、请你观察图片,根据图片内容写一写。

1. The girl is _____ _____ _____



, but her sister starts _____

_____



.



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

2. I am _____ _____ , but the bell _____ .

3. Dingding is _____ _____ _____ , but it _____ _____ _____ .

4. I am _____ _____ , but the phone _____ .

5. He _____ _____ , but it starts _____ _____ .

## 六、按要求完成句子。

1. Sam is listening to music. (改为否定句)

_____

2. Are you walking in the park? (作肯定回答)

_____

3. I am flying a kite. You are swimming.
(用 and 连成一句话)

_____

4. I am watching TV. The dog starts to bark.
(用 but 连成一句话)

_____

5. She is talking to her friend. (对画线部分提问)

_____

## 七、选择正确的句子补全对话。

**A**: Do you want to see my photos?

**B**: 1. _____

**A**: Look at this one.

**B**: 2. _____

**A**: We are having a birthday party. It was my birthday last Sunday.

**B**: I like this one. 3 _____

**A**: Yes, I like playing the *suona* very much. It's my hobby.

**B**: 4. _____

**A**: Yes, I can.

**B**: 5. _____

**A**: Really?

**B**: Yes.

A. You are playing the *suona*.
B. Can you play the *suona* for me now?
C. What are you doing?
D. You play very well.
E. Yes, I'd love to.

## 八、阅读短文,判断句子正(T)误(F)。

【导学号 9723228】

Peter is from Japan. He has a happy family. Look, his father is cooking in the kitchen. His mother is watching TV in the living room. What is Peter doing? He is playing chess with his sister in the study. They are playing, but the bell rings. It's Peter 's friend.

(　　)1. Peter's father is reading a book.
(　　)2. Peter's mother is cooking.
(　　)3. Peter is playing chess with his sister.
(　　)4. Peter's grandpa comes to his home.
(　　)5. Peter is from England.



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

# Module 5 能力过关练 ☞(答案见108页)

## 听说专练

一、听录音，选出你所听到的单词。

听力训练

(　　)1. A. having　B. have　C. has

(　　)2. A. violin　B. *suona*　C. guitar

(　　)3. A. ring　B. rings　C. ringing

(　　)4. A. bell　B. doorbell　C. door

(　　)5. A. loudly　B. noisy　C. loud

二、听录音，根据录音内容连线。

1. 　A. 

2. 　B. 

3. 　C. 

4. 　D. 

5. 　E. 

三、听录音，判断下列句子与所听内容是（T）否（F）一致。

(　　)1. She is having lunch, but the bell rings.

(　　)2. They are singing and dancing.

(　　)3. We are having a picnic.

(　　)4. The dog is barking.

(　　)5. I wake up from my dream.

四、听录音，根据录音内容选词补全句子。

A. playing football　B. third time　C. rain
D. eating　E. playing the piano　F. phone
G. sing　H. doing my homework

1. I am _____, but my sister starts to _____.

2. We are _____, but it starts to _____.

3. They are _____, but the _____ rings.

4. Amy is _____.

5. Mum is making a cake for the _____.

五、看图片，仿照例子说句子。

口语测评

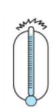
例： 

(ride a bike, start to rain)

He is riding a bike, but it starts to rain.

1.  

(play computer games, phone, ring)

2.  

(do exercise, get hot)

## 读写专练

六、根据图片以及上下文补全对话。



**A**: Whose 1. _____ is it?

**B**: It's 2. _____ birthday.

**A**: 3. _____ is Daming doing?

**B**: He is 4. _____ the *suona*.



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

**A**:5. _____ the bell ringing now?

**B**:Yes,it 6. _____.

**A**:7. _____ comes in?

**B**:Some friends 8. _____ in.

**A**:And Simon's dog 9. _____ in too.

## 七、阅读短文，根据短文内容判断句子正（T）误（F）。

The children are at Ben's birthday party. There is a big birthday cake on the table. On the cake there are twelve candles. Look! Daming is playing the piano and Simon is playing the guitar. Now the doorbell is ringing. Kate opens the door. They are Ben's friends. They bring lots of presents. Tom gives Ben a new pen. Nancy gives him a CD. Maomao gives him a card. Now they are singing the song *Happy Birthday to You* to Ben. Ben is very happy.

(　　)1. The children are having a picnic.

(　　)2. There is a big birthday cake on the table.

(　　)3. Ben is twelve years old today.

(　　)4. Daming is playing the guitar and Simon is playing the piano.

(　　)5. They are singing the song *Happy Birthday to You* to Ben now.

## 八、阅读短文，根据短文内容选择正确答案。

It's late at night. Mark is sitting on his bed and he is looking at his watch. His neighbours are making a noise. Mark is very angry.

The people in Apartment（公寓）2 are dancing. The man in Apartment 3 is cleaning the room. The woman in Apartment 4 is playing the violin. The high school students in Apartment 5 are listening to rock music. The dog in Apartment 6 is barking loudly. And the people in Apartment 7 are having an argument(争吵).

Mark can't stand(忍受)it. What can he do? And how can he spend such a long and sleepless night?

(　　)1. Mark's neighbours are _____.

A. noisy　　B. sleeping　　C. quiet

(　　)2. The dog in Apartment 6 is _____.

A. singing　　B. running　　C. barking

(　　)3. The people in Apartment 2 are _____.

A. cleaning the room

B. playing the violin

C. dancing

(　　)4. When do Mark's neighbours make a noise?

A. In the day.　　B. In the afternoon.

C. At night.

(　　)5. How does Mark feel?

A. He feels very happy.

B. He feels very angry.

C. He feels excited.

## 九、假如你是 Linda，今天过生日，请你发挥想象用现在进行时描述一下生日派对的热闹情景(至少五句话)。



I am Linda. Today is my birthday. _____

_____

_____

_____

_____



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

# Module 6

## Unit 1 It was Daming's birthday yesterday. ☞(答案见109页)

### 一、核心素养练

根据英语单词在句子中的功能,可分为名词、动词、形容词、代词、副词、介词、冠词、数词等不同类别。

请你读一读下面的单词,选出每组中不同类的选项。

( )1. A. China B. Russia C. home

( )2. A. plane B. paper C. spaceship

( )3. A. buy B. got C. saw

( )4. A. about B. present C. book

( )5. A. him B. decide C. finish

( )6. A. earth B. space C. moon

### 二、仿照例子,写一写。

例:get got 得到

1. buy _____ _____

2. show _____ _____

3. ask _____ _____

4. see _____ _____

5. give _____ _____

6. learn _____ _____

7. decide _____ _____

### 三、单项选择。

( )1. Welcome _____! I miss you so much.

A. home B. school C. to home

( )2. I am very interested _____ the book.

A. in B. to C. for

( )3. It was a book _____ space travel.

A. with B. about C. for

( )4. Daming _____ a lot about space travel.

A. learning B. learn C. learnt

( )5. Daming asked _____ to read the book with him.

A. him B. he C. his

### 四、看图,仿照例子写句子。

(一)例:




Amy (Sam)

On Sam's birthday, Amy bought him a present. It was a yellow cap.

1.




Mum (Daming)

On Daming's birthday, _____

_____

2.

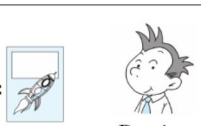



Grandma (Lingling)

On Lingling's birthday, _____

_____

(二)例:



Daming

It's a book about space travel. Daming is interested in space travel.



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料




Sam

五、读句子，找出对应的答句。

(　　)1. What did you buy on the earth?

(　　)2. What is it?

(　　)3. Did you buy me a book?

(　　)4. I bought you a new bike.

(　　)5. What did you do?

A. It's a spaceship.
B. I read an interesting book.
C. Thank you, Dad.
D. Yes, I did.
E. I bought a lot of things.

六、请你读一读，想一想，然后选出错误的一项并在横线上改正。

(　　)1. He gave me to a present.
A　B　C　_____

(　　)2. They decided to making a card.
A　B　C　_____

(　　)3. The book are about animals.
A　B　C　_____

(　　)4. Daming and Simon get some books yesterday.
A　B　C　_____

(　　)5. Daming thanked she for the present.
A　B　C　_____

七、按要求完成句子。

1. Dad bought a bike for me. (写出同义句)

_____

2. Daming gave Simon's mother a paper spaceship. (写出同义句)

_____

3. a about book was space it travel (.) (连词成句)

_____

4. I bought a lot of things. (对画线部分提问)

_____

5. It is my birthday today. (用 yesterday 改写句子)

_____

八、阅读对话，将人物与活动连线。

**Miss Li**: How did you spend your Sunday, children?

**Sam**: I stayed at home and watched TV. I watched a football game.

**Jack**: I read books in the morning and went to a park in the afternoon.

**Amy**: I cleaned my room in the morning and studied in the afternoon.

**Simon**: I went to the bookstore and bought some books about space travel. I was interested in the books.

**Lingling**: I went to the cinema and saw an interesting movie.

**Daming**: I made a paper spaceship at home.

**Children**: What did you do last Sunday, Miss Li?

**Miss Li**: Well, in the morning, I went shopping and did housework. I felt tired, so I slept the whole afternoon.

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. Sam | A. went shopping and slept |
| 2. Jack | B. watched TV |
| 3. Amy | C. bought some books |
| 4. Simon | D. cleaned the room |
| 5. Lingling | E. made a paper spaceship |
| 6. Daming | F. read books and went to a park |
| 7. Miss Li | G. saw a movie |



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

# Unit 2 The name of the spaceship is *Shenzhou V*.

☞(答案见109页)

## 一、选择正确的一项补全单词。

( )1. h__m__ A. o;a B. o;e C. a;o

( )2. br__ __ght A. au B. ue C. ou

( )3. s__ __ce A. pe B. pa C. qa

( )4. f__n__sh A. a;i B. i;i C. o;u

( )5. d__c__de A. e;i B. i;e C. o;a

( )6. __nter__sted A. i;e B. e;i C. e;e

( )7. m__de__ A. a;l B. o;l C. o;a

( )8. p__p__r A. a;o B. a;e C. a;a

( )9. f__ __st A. ir B. ri C. er

( )10. n__tion__l A. a;e B. o;o C. a;a

## 二、读句子，根据图片提示选择正确的单词补全句子。

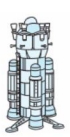
| | | |
|---|---|---|
| A. present | B. earth | C. national |
| D. interesting | E. spaceship | F. model |

1. 

2. 


3. 

4. 

5. 

6. 

1. The _____ goes around the sun.

2. She bought an _____book about animals.

3. Amy gave Daming a birthday _____.

4. *Shenzhou V* took the _____ flag of China into space.

5. Daming made a _____ of a Chinese spaceship.

6. Yang Liwei travelled to space in a _____.

## 三、选词填空。（每词限用一次）

on at to for in back

1. I gave my pen _____ my friend.

2. Mum bought a book _____me.

3. There is a man _____ the spaceship.

4. It's raining, so I have to stay _____ home.

5. My father brought _____ some delicious food from Shanghai.

6. She hung the basket _____ the bike.

## 四、核心素养练

掌握单词词性，并根据词性分类，便于我们记忆同类词。

请你读单词，想一想，然后写出一个同类词。

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. fly | read | run | _____ |
| 2. watching | playing | drawing | _____ |
| 3. asked | bought | thanked | _____ |
| 4. them | him | her | _____ |
| 5. paper | spaceship | flag | _____ |
| 6. in | at | of | _____ |
| 7. taikonaut | teacher | farmer | _____ |
| 8. Canada | US | Russia | _____ |
| 9. third | second | fourth | _____ |
| 10. seed | flower | tree | _____ |

## 五、单项选择。

( )1. The spaceship took _____ to the earth.

A. we B. I C. us



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

( )2. Lingling bought _____ a present.
A. he B. she C. her

( )3. The name _____ the spaceship is *Shenzhou V*.
A. with B. of C. at

( )4. Yesterday Sam visited our school _____ the first time.
A. at B. in C. for

( )5. He _____ a model of a spaceship last Sunday.
A. make B. made C. is making

( )6. *Shenzhou V* took Yang Liwei _____ space in 2003.
A. in B. at C. into

( )7. Please _____ me a pen.
A. buy B. buying C. bought

( )8. They saw many pictures of spaceships _____ China, Russia and the US.
A. with B. from C. at

## 六、读句子，给句子排序。

( ) Can I have a look?

( ) Oh, it looks interesting. Who gave it to you?

( ) Great!

( ) What's this, Lily?

( ) It's a book about science.

( ) My friend gave it to me.

( ) Sure. Let's read it together.

## 七、连词成句。

1. name spaceship the is of the *Shenzhou V* ( . )

_____

2. made Sam plane a paper ( . )

_____

3. brought the spaceship presents our back ( . )

_____

4. taikonaut took into the first time it a Chinese space for ( . )

_____

5. flag the China took it national and seeds of some ( . )

_____

## 八、阅读短文，选择正确的答案，将其序号填入题前括号里。

Last Saturday morning, Lucy went to a supermarket. She wanted to buy a big cake for her mother. There were many people at the supermarket. Suddenly, Lucy saw a beautiful wallet on the floor.

"Excuse me. Is this your wallet, sir?" she asked the man in front of her. "No, it isn't," the man said. "Perhaps(可能) it's hers." He pointed at the woman in front of him. "Is this wallet yours?" she asked the woman. "Let me have a look. Oh, yes. Thank you very much."

( )1. Lucy went to a _____.
A. park B. cinema
C. supermarket

( )2. She saw many _____ at the supermarket.
A. cars B. animals C. people

( )3. Lucy saw a beautiful _____ on the floor.
A. cake B. doll C. wallet

( )4. There is a _____ in front of Lucy.
A. boy B. man C. baby

( )5. The wallet is _____.
A. Lucy's B. the man's C. the woman's

【导学号 9723228】



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

# Module 6 能力过关练 ☞(答案见109页)

## 听说专练

### 一、听录音，选择正确的单词填空。

听力训练

( )1. This _____ is for you.
A. T-shirt B. sweater C. book

( )2. We live on the _____.
A. earth B. moon C. sun

( )3. My brother wants to be a _____.
A. star B. doctor C. taikonaut

( )4. Jack's _____ bought him a present.
A. mum B. friend C. father

( )5. I got the _____ from my grandmother.
A. books B. seeds C. presents

### 二、听录音，选择最佳答语。

( )1. A. Yes, I do. B. Yes, I did. C. Yes, I am.

( )2. A. I'm going to the zoo.
B. I went to the park.
C. I'm in the park.

( )3. A. She bought him a bike.
B. She brought him a T-shirt.
C. She's going to buy a bike.

( )4. A. It's about space travel.
B. It's in space.
C. It's going to rain.

( )5. A. She is from the US.
B. He's in the UK. C. Simon.

### 三、听录音，根据录音内容连线。

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. Lingling's father | A. a pen |
| 2. Lingling's mother | B. a bicycle |
| 3. Sam | C. a book about English |
| 4. Amy | D. a beautiful dress |
| 5. Daming | E. a doll |

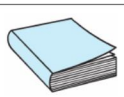
### 四、听录音，根据录音内容填单词。

It _____ a nice day yesterday. I made a _____ of a spaceship with my friends. It's _____ and white. Then I went to _____ and had a _____. It _____ me and my friends into _____ for the _____ time. We were _____.

### 五、根据表格内容，仿照例子说句子。

口语测评

例：1. On Daming's birthday, Sam bought him a toy car.

| | birthday | friends | presents |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Daming | Sam |  |
| 2. | Amy | Lingling |  |
| 3. | Lingling | Daming |  |
| 4. | Mike | Tom |  |

### 六、看图片，请你说说他们感兴趣的是什么？

例：

Daming

Daming was interested in the book.

1.  (Xia Yu)

2.  (Li Hao)

3.  (Mike)



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

## 读写专练

七、阅读短文，根据短文内容写出动词的正确形式。

Last Sunday, Dad 1. _____ (take) me to the park. In the park, I 2. _____ (see) a little girl crying. She 3. _____ (tell) us she 4. _____ (can't) find her parents. We 5. _____ (help) her look for her parents. After a while, we 6. _____ (see) her parents. The girl 7. _____ (run) to them. The girl 8. _____ (is) happy, and her parents 9. _____ (are) happy too. They 10. _____ (thank) us, and we 11. _____ (say) goodbye to each other.

八、阅读短文，回答问题。

Len was thirty years old, and he had very long hair. He lived in a big city. Because of his long hair, he did not find any jobs. One day he met an old friend, and this man said to him, "People in this city don't like long hair. Why don't you go to a barber's(理发店)? The barber can cut a lot of it off, and then you can get a job." At the barber's, Len said to the barber, "Please cut most of my hair off." The barber began. He cut and cut for a long time and then he said to Len, "Were you in the army a few years ago?" "Yes, I was," Len answered. "Why did you ask that?" "Because I found a cap in your hair," the barber said.

1. How old was Len?

_____

2. Where did he live?

_____

3. Why couldn't he find any jobs?

_____

4. What did the barber find in Len's hair?

_____

5. Where did Len work then?

_____

九、阅读短文，根据短文内容判断句子正(T)误(F)。

Bob is an alien(外星人) from Planet Alpha(阿尔法星球). He came to the earth five years ago in a spaceship for the first time. He is not a taikonaut but he knows how to travel in space. He comes to China to find some seeds this time. Tomorrow he is going back to his planet. He bought many presents for his family: books, kites, cakes and even a national flag of China. He will get home next month. Bob says he can't wait to hear his mother say "Welcome home".

(　　)1. Bob is a taikonaut.

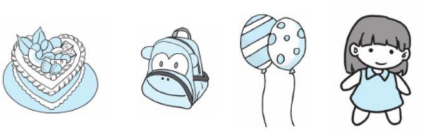
(　　)2. Bob came to the earth five years ago in a spaceship for the first time.

(　　)3. Bob doesn't know how to travel in space.

(　　)4. Bob bought books, kites, cakes and a flag for his family.

(　　)5. Bob misses his home very much.

十、兰兰昨天过生日，她收到了很多礼物，请你观察下面的图片，然后发挥想象，用英语写一段话(至少五句话)。



I am Lanlan. It was my birthday yesterday.

_____

_____



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

# Module 7

## Unit 1 He spent about twenty-one hours in space. ☞(答案见110页)

### 一、根据图片和首字母提示补全句子。

1. 

2. 
3. 
4. 
5. 
6. 

1. O_____ 1st is National Day in China.
2. Mum s_____ one hour reading books every night.
3. We f_____ to London yesterday.
4. I watched a v_____ last night.
5. He won the race. I was p_____ of him.
6. I finished my homework at a_____ eight last night.

### 二、将下列短语与正确的意思连线。

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. a long time ago | A. 回来 |
| 2. flew into space | B. 去飞机场 |
| 3. made a video | C. 很久以前 |
| 4. come back | D. 为他骄傲 |
| 5. go to the airport | E. 拍录像 |
| 6. be proud of him | F. 飞往太空 |

### 三、核心素养练

英语中常有将两个词组合成一个新词的情况，如space为“太空”的意思，ship为“船”的意思，两个词拼在一起，为“宇宙飞船”的意思。

请你也来拼一拼，写出下面的单词以及汉语意思。

例：space + ship = spaceship(宇宙飞船)

1. air + port = _____(　　)
2. some + day = _____(　　)
3. class + room = _____(　　)
4. school + bag = _____(　　)

### 四、单项选择。

(　　)1. I _____ to Sichuan a long time ago.
A. go　　B. goes　　C. went

(　　)2. My aunt _____ to Shanghai last Sunday.
A. fly　　B. flying　　C. flew

(　　)3. _____ October 2013, my father worked in Shanghai.
A. In　　B. On　　C. At

(　　)4. Yang Liwei _____ a video in space.
A. make　　B. made　　C. making

(　　)5. My teacher does a lot of _____ at school.
A. work　　B. works　　C. working

(　　)6. Amy is a good student. Her mother is proud of _____.
A. she　　B. her　　C. hers

### 五、读句子，选词填空。

of　at　into　about　in

1. Neil Armstrong flew to the moon _____ 1969.
2. Li Qing spent _____ three hours in the library.
3. Look _____ the river. The water is clean.



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

4. All the people of our country are proud _____ Yang Liwei.
5. Peter hopes to go _____ space someday.

## 六、连词成句。

1. me proud my was very mother of (.)

_____

2. space flew *Shenzhou V* into in Yang Liwei (.)

_____

3. did of work there he a lot (.)

_____

4. spent he twenty-one space in hours about (.)

_____

5. video he made a space in (.)

_____

6. want someday I to space into go (.)

_____

## 七、读句子，用所给词的正确形式填空。

1. My parents and I _____ (go) to the airport to meet my uncle yesterday.
2. I want to _____ (visit) the West Lake someday.
3. My mother _____ (spend) two hours in the supermarket.
4. This is my _____ (one) time to go to Japan.
5. My father _____ (tell) me about his childhood last night.

## 八、读一读，选一选。

( )1. Yang Liwei is a taikonaut.
( )2. Lingling studies hard.
( )3. My mother is a teacher.
( )4. Yang Liwei's family met him at the airport.
( )5. I spent about nine hours on the farm.

A. She teaches English.
B. They were happy.
C. Her mother is proud of her.
D. I felt tired.
E. He flew into space in 2003.

## 九、阅读短文，选择正确的答案。

*Shenzhou V* is the first manned (载人的) spaceship of China. It flew into space on October 15, 2003. It took the national flag of China and some seeds. It also took a Chinese taikonaut into space for the first time. His name is Yang Liwei.

And he is very famous. He spent about twenty-one hours in space. He did a lot of work there. He also made a video in space, and lots of people watched it. Then he came back to the earth.

( )1. "Spaceship" means "_____".

A.  B.  C. 

( )2. What did Yang Liwei do in space?
A. He bought a video.
B. He made a video.
C. He danced.

( )3. Which national flag did *Shenzhou V* take into space?

A.  B.  C. 

( )4. Yang Liwei is _____ taikonaut into space in China.
A. the third B. first
C. the first

( )5. Yang Liwei spent about _____ hours in space.
A. ten B. twenty-one
C. thirty



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

# Unit 2 She couldn't see or hear. ☞(答案见110页)

## 一、请你仔细观察图片，然后根据图片及字母提示补全句子。

1. He can't see. He is _____. (l,b,n,i,d)



2. Daming was _____ in China. (n,r,o,b)



3. Helen _____ to be eighty-seven. (e,d,i,l,v)



4. I can _____ this word. (s,l,e,p,l)




5. Helen wrote a book about _____. (s,e,f,l,e,r,h)




## 二、选出与所给单词同类的一项。

( )1. could A. big B. to C. can

( )2. herself A. myself B. video C. over

( )3. taught A. model B. letter C. travelled

( )4. hand A. someday B. blind C. leg

( )5. teacher A. book B. letter C. pupil

## 三、读句子，用所给词的适当形式填空。

1. She couldn't _____ (see) or _____ (hear).

2. Later, Helen _____ (have) a teacher.

3. The baby learned _____ (speak).

4. As a baby, she _____ (become) blind and deaf.

5. My grandfather lived _____ (be) 87.

## 四、单项选择。

( )1. Daming is a role model for you and _____.

A. I B. me C. we

( )2. —_____ were you born?

—I was born in 2006.

A. Where B. What C. When

( )3. Helen _____ to read and write when she was young.

A. learn B. learnt C. learns

( )4. The teacher drew letters in _____ hand.

A. she B. he C. Helen's

( )5. Helen Keller was born _____ the US _____ 1880.

A. in;on B. on;on C. in;in

( )6. She travelled all _____ the world.

A. of B. about C. over

## 五、核心素养练

并列句中，通常会用到连词，and 表示顺承，but 表示转折。

请你读一读，根据句子前后的逻辑关系，选用恰当的连词补充句子。

1. My mother bought a new dress _____ she never wears it.

2. Sam has a new football _____ he plays football after school.

3. He is going to the park _____ it starts to rain.

4. I went to the airport _____ I didn't find my friend.

5. I went to a cinema _____ I watched a film.



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

六、阅读短文，用 could 或 couldn't 填空。

When I was a baby, I _____ see but I _____ read. I _____ hear but I _____ talk. I _____ walk but I _____ play.

七、选择正确的答案补全对话。

A: Hello, Mike. Do you know Helen Keller?

B: 1. _____

A: Where was she born?

B: 2. _____

A: When was she born?

B: 3. _____

A: What was the matter with her?

B: 4. _____

A: Did she have a teacher?

B: 5. _____

A: Why was she famous?

B: 6. _____ And she travelled all over the world.

A: She is a role model for all of us.

A. Yes, she did. B. Yes, I do.
C. She was born in 1880.
D. She couldn't see or hear.
E. She was born in the US.
F. She wrote a book about herself.

八、连词成句。【穿针引线法】

1. US Sam the born was in (.)

_____

2. travelled the she over all world (.)

_____

3. deaf became she blind and (.)

_____

4. eighty-seven she be to lived (.)

_____

5. me you and a model is role for Lei Feng (.)

_____

九、完形填空。

Jim 1. _____ born in 1993 in New York. He 2. _____ to China three years ago. He ate good food and 3. _____ mountains in his summer holiday. He 4. _____ a new friend. They sang and 5. _____ together in the park. They 6. _____ very happy.

( )1. A. was B. is C. were
( )2. A. came B. come C. comes
( )3. A. climb B. climbed C. climbing
( )4. A. have B. had C. having
( )5. A. to dance B. dances C. danced
( )6. A. is B. was C. were

十、阅读短文，根据短文内容判断句子正（T）误（F）。

Tai Lihua is a Chinese woman. She is very beautiful. As a child, she became deaf and dumb (哑的). She couldn't hear or say. She was very sad. Later, she had a teacher. The teacher taught her to dance. Though she couldn't hear, she was very hard-working. She danced very well. Now, she is very famous. She is not sad any more. We should learn from her.

( )1. Tai Lihua is a Chinese woman.
( )2. As a child, Tai Lihua became blind.
( )3. Tai Lihua couldn't hear or say, but she was very happy.
( )4. Tai Lihua is good at dancing.
( )5. Tai Lihua's mother taught her to dance.



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

# Module 7 能力过关练 ☞(答案见 110 页)

## 听说专练

一、听录音，给下列图片排序。

听力训练



(　　)



(　　)



(　　)



(　　)



(　　)

二、听录音，选择合适的答语。

(　　)1. A. She is a nurse.　B. He is a worker.
C. Yes, he is.

(　　)2. A. In 2005.　B. In 2004.　C. In 2003.

(　　)3. A. Yes, she could.　B. No, she didn't.
C. Yes, she was.

(　　)4. A. Yes, I do.　B. Yes, I did.
C. No, he didn't.

(　　)5. A. Yes, I did.　B. Yes, I was.
C. Yes, I do.

三、听录音，根据录音内容填单词，补全句子。

1. Daming _____ _____ _____ for Simon last Sunday.
2. I spent _____ _____ in the park yesterday.
3. Confucius was _____ _____ _____.
4. All my teachers _____ _____ _____ me.

四、听录音，根据录音内容判断句子正（T）误（F）。

(　　)1. Liu Yang is a man.

(　　)2. Liu Yang is a famous taikonaut.

(　　)3. Liu Yang flew into space in 2013.

(　　)4. She made a video and lots of people watched it.

(　　)5. People are proud of Liu Yang.

五、看图片，仿照例子说句子。

口语测评

例：

(Helen, see, hear, read, talk)
Helen couldn't see or hear.
But she could read and talk.

1. 

(the old man, see, walk)

2. 

(she, walk, speak)

六、朗读下列句子。

1. I was born in Shanghai in 2009.
2. I live in Beijing now.
3. I learnt to read and write.
4. I could sing English songs too.
5. Li Lei is my friend. He can play basketball and play the piano.
6. He is my role model.



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

## 读写专练

七、读句子，在与句子意思相符的图片下面填上相应的序号。

1. Helen wrote a book about herself.
2. Helen travelled all over the world.
3. Helen learned to read and write.
4. Helen had a teacher.
5. Helen Keller was born in the US in 1880.
6. She became blind and deaf. She couldn't see or hear.





(　　)　(　　)　(　　)





(　　)　(　　)　(　　)

八、阅读短文，判断句子正（T）误（F）。

*Shenzhou IX* flew into space with two men and one woman on June 16th, 2012. On June 29th, *Shenzhou IX* returned to the earth and all three taikonauts were good.

The woman taikonaut is Liu Yang. She was born in 1978 in Henan Province(省). In 1997, she joined the army (部队) and became a pilot(飞行员). In 2010, she became one of the taikonauts. And she is a great woman taikonaut in China.

Two men taikonauts are Jing Haipeng and Liu Wang. Jing Haipeng was born in 1966 in Shanxi. He joined the army in 1985. Liu Wang was born in 1969 in Shanxi. He joined the army in 1988.

They are all great taikonauts. And we are proud of them.

(　　)1. *Shenzhou IX* sent three people into space.
(　　)2. *Shenzhou IX* returned to the earth in July.
(　　)3. Jing Haipeng is the oldest taikonaut of the three.
(　　)4. Liu Yang became a taikonaut in 2010.
(　　)5. Liu Wang was born in Shandong.

九、阅读短文，根据短文内容选择正确答案。

I'm Lingling. I like travelling (旅游). In summer holiday, I went to Australia with my parents. We lived in Sydney. We saw a lot of flowers. We also saw some koalas (考拉) and kangaroos(袋鼠). Koalas are very cute. Kangaroos jump on their back legs. Mother kangaroos have special bags for the babies. I like Australia. And we will go to London next year.

(　　)1. When did Lingling go to Australia?
A. On Monday.　B. In summer holiday.
C. Yesterday.

(　　)2. Where did they live?
A. In Hainan.　B. In America.
C. In Sydney.

(　　)3. Are koalas very cute?
A. Yes, you are.　B. No, they aren't.
C. Yes, they are.

(　　)4. Does she like Australia?
A. Yes, she does.
B. No, she doesn't.
C. No, she isn't.

(　　)5. Where will they go next year?
A. To Beijing.　B. To New York.
C. To London.

十、请以"My role model"为题，用英语写一段话，介绍一下你心中的榜样(至少五句话)。

**My role model**



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

# Module 8

## Unit 1 Why do you have cups on your heads?

☞(答案见110页)

### 一、核心素养练

英语中有很多读音或拼写相近的单词。你能区分下列单词吗?

请你认一认,然后根据图片选一选。

(　　)1. 

A. baseball
B. basketball

(　　)2. 

A. hard
B. head

(　　)3. 

A. life
B. laugh

(　　)4. 

A. cap
B. cup

(　　)5. 


A. word
B. world

### 二、在横线上写出下列动词的汉语意思并将其与对应的过去式连线。

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. come | _____ | A. brought |
| 2. say | _____ | B. laughed |
| 3. tell | _____ | C. came |
| 4. plan | _____ | D. planned |
| 5. bring | _____ | E. told |
| 6. smile | _____ | F. shouted |
| 7. shout | _____ | G. smiled |
| 8. laugh | _____ | H. said |

### 三、单项选择。

(　　)1. Why do you _____ cups on your heads?

A. had　　B. have　　C. has

(　　)2. They put the cups on their heads and laughed _____.

A. one　　B. more　　C. happy

(　　)3. Amy asked Lingling to _____ some caps for the game.

A. bring　　B. brought　　C. brings

(　　)4. Daming _____ to play a baseball game last week.

A. planning　B. planed　　C. planned

(　　)5. Don't make mistakes _____ Maths again.

A. with　　B. of　　C. for

(　　)6. —Are you _____, Lisa?
—Yes, I lost my cat.

A. hungry　　B. happy　　C. sad

### 四、读句子,用数字排序。

(　　) Where are you going?
(　　) Why are you wearing a raincoat now?
(　　) See you later!
(　　) Why don't you take an umbrella?
(　1　) Hello, Xiaoli. Why didn't I see you yesterday?
(　　) Because I don't have an umbrella.
(　　) I am going to the shop and buy some food. See you!
(　　) Because I went to visit my grandma yesterday.
(　　) Because it's going to rain.

### 五、看图片,根据图片内容找出对应的答句。

1. 　2. 　3. 



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

4.  5.  6. 

( )1. Why are they laughing?

( )2. Why is the man sleeping?

( )3. Why is the boy happy?

( )4. Why is the baby crying?

( )5. Why is the boy shouting?

( )6. Why is the boy running?

A. Because he is tired.
B. Because they put cups on their heads.
C. Because he hurts his leg.
D. Because he likes reading books.
E. Because he is afraid.
F. Because he needs his mum.

## 六、用所给词的适当形式完成句子。

【导学号 9723228】

1. Why are you _____ (laugh)?
2. We are going to _____ (have) dinner.
3. Amy said, "Bring cups for the baseball game." So I _____ (bring) these cups.
4. It's easy _____ (make) a mistake with English.
5. I didn't _____ (say) "cups". I _____ (say) "caps".
6. They plan _____ (play) a game.
7. He _____ (put) a red cap on his head.

## 七、按要求完成句子。

1. There are some caps in my bag.
(对画线部分提问)

_____

2. Because I am angry. (用 Why 和 shout 提问)

_____

3. She didn't come into our classroom. (改为肯定句)

_____

4. They went to the playground. They played baseball together. (合成一句话)

_____

5. cups why you on have do heads your (?) (连词成句)

_____

## 八、阅读对话，根据对话内容选择正确答案。

【信息定位法】

**Daming**: Why are you laughing? What are you going to do?

**Sam**: Because I'm happy. We are going to have a picnic.

**Daming**: Why have you got a cat, Sam?

**Amy**: Lingling said, "Bring your cup for the picnic." So Sam brought his cat.

**Lingling**: I didn't say "cat". I said "cup". I wanted you to bring some cups for drinking.

**Daming**: Haha! It's easy to make mistakes with English words. Guess what I've got in my bag.

**Sam**: What?

**Daming**: The cups.

**All**: Great! Let's drink and play.

( )1. They are going to have a _____.
A. picnic B. party C. park

( )2. Sam brought a _____ for the picnic.
A. cup B. cake C. cat

( )3. _____ made a mistake.
A. Sam B. Daming C. Lingling

( )4. It's _____ to make mistakes with English words.
A. hard B. easy C. difficult

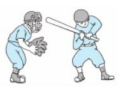
( )5. Daming brought some _____ in his bag.
A. drinks B. food C. cups



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

# Unit 2 Why are you wearing a hat? ☞(答案见111页)

## 一、读句子，根据图片及首字母提示补全单词。

1. 
2. 
3. 
4. 

5. 
6. 

1. The boy is wearing a c_____.
2. The children p_____ to play a basketball game in the park.
3. Jack likes playing b_____.
4. Lily s_____ because she is reading a funny book.
5. Daming made a m_____ with English words.
6. She is wearing a r_____.

## 二、读单词，选出不同类的一项，并在横线上再写一个同类词。

( )1. A. dress B. map C. shirt _____
( )2. A. cry B. where C. what _____
( )3. A. baseball B. football C. game _____
( )4. A. happy B. head C. sad _____
( )5. A. T-shirt B. theatre C. school _____
( )6. A. laughing B. shouted C. planned _____

## 三、单项选择。

( )1. My mother went to the _____ and bought some bananas.
A. school B. supermarket C. home
( )2. Lingling told _____ an interesting story yesterday.
A. he B. she C. me
( )3. She planned _____ a football game.
A. playing B. play C. to play
( )4. It's easy _____ my homework.
A. does B. doing C. to do
( )5. —_____ are you tired?
—Because I worked on the farm.
A. When B. Why C. Where
( )6. —Why are you here?
—_____ I am going to the bookstore.
A. So B. And C. Because

## 四、根据图片和提示词回答问题。

1. 
(hungry)
—Why is he eating a big cake?
—Because _____

2. 
(play a baseball game)
—Why are you wearing a cap?
—_____

3. 
(go to the theatre)
—Why are you wearing a dress?
—_____



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

4. 

(rain)

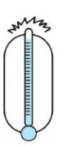
—Why are you wearing a raincoat?

—_____

## 五、读句子，将对应的图片连线。【抓关键词法】

1. **A**: Why are you playing football?
   **B**: Because it's sunny.
2. **A**: Why are you eating an ice cream?
   **B**: Because it's very hot.
3. **A**: Why are you wearing a coat?
   **B**: Because it's very cold.
4. **A**: Why do you buy a cake?
   **B**: Because today is my son's birthday.
5. **A**: Why are you staying at home?
   **B**: Because it's raining.

1. 
2. 
3. 
4. 
5. 

A. 
B. 
C. 
D. 
E. 

## 六、选择恰当的单词，补全对话。

【导学号 9723228】

A. How　B. What　C. with
D. Why　E. asked

**A**: Hello, Wang Jun. 1. _____ didn't you go to school yesterday?

**B**: Because I was ill and went to the hospital.

**A**: 2. _____ did the doctor say?

**B**: He 3. _____ me to drink more water.

**A**: Oh. 4. _____ are you now?

**B**: I'm well now. Thank you.

**A**: That's OK. I'm going to the zoo this afternoon.

**B**: Really? Can I go 5. _____ you?

**A**: OK.

## 七、阅读短文，判断句子正（T）误（F）。

Tingting is a Chinese girl. But now she lives in the US. She can speak English, but sometimes she makes mistakes. Last week, Tingting went to a farm with her friends. She told her friends she wanted to see a ship. Everyone looked surprised and Tingting didn't know why.

Sam said, "Tingting, we are going to the farm, not to the sea. There are no ships on the farm."

Then Tingting knew her mistake. Tingting wanted to say "sheep" not "ship". It was very funny. Her friends all laughed.

(　　)1. Tingting is in China now.

(　　)2. Tingting sometimes makes mistakes with English words.

(　　)3. Tingting went to the sea last week.

(　　)4. Tingting wanted to see a sheep.

(　　)5. There were ships on the farm.



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

# Module 8 能力过关练 ☞(答案见111页)

## 听说专练

一、听录音，给下列图片标序号。

听力训练






(　　)　(　　)　(　　)





(　　)　(　　)

二、听录音，选出你所听到的单词。

(　　)1. A. cap　　B. cup　　C. map

(　　)2. A. baseball　　B. table　　C. football

(　　)3. A. and　　B. angry　　C. any

(　　)4. A. mistake　　B. miss　　C. take

(　　)5. A. want　　B. more　　C. mountain

三、听问句，选答语。

(　　)1. A. Because I'm tall.
B. Because I'm sad.

(　　)2. A. Because it's going to rain.
B. Because it's going to be sunny.

(　　)3. A. Because today is hot.
B. Because today is cold.

(　　)4. A. Because I am playing basketball.
B. Because I am going to the theatre.

(　　)5. A. Because I am reading a book.
B. Because he is going to play football.

四、听录音，根据录音内容填单词。

**Mum**: Tom, why are you wearing a 1. _____?

**Tom**: 2. _____ it's very hot today. And look at my sister Amy. Why is she wearing a new 3. _____?

**Mum**: Oh, she's going to a 4. _____. And why is Lingling wearing a 5. _____?

**Tom**: Because she's going to play 6. _____.

五、看图片，仿照例子说句子。

口语测评

例：
—Why are you laughing?
—Because I'm happy.

1. 　(cry; can't find my mum)

2. 　(shout; angry)

3. 　(eat; hungry)

4. 　(sleep; tired)

## 读写专练

六、根据图片选择恰当的选项。

(　　)1. 

A. He is playing football.
B. He is playing baseball.

(　　)2. 

A. There are some books in the bag.
B. There are some balls in the bag.

(　　)3. 



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

A. We are playing hide-and-seek.

B. We are listening to music.

( )4. 

A. She is wearing a raincoat. Because it's going to rain.

B. She is wearing a hat. Because it's going to be sunny.

( )5. 

A. He is wearing a coat. Because it's cold today.

B. He is wearing a T-shirt. Because it's hot today.

## 七、阅读对话，选择正确答案。

**Mrs Green**: Why are you so sad?

**Mrs Brown**: Because I lost my cat last week.

**Mrs Green**: I'm so sorry. But why don't you write something on the paper and send it to the newspaper if you want her to be back?

**Mrs Brown**: Don't be silly. She is a Japanese cat and she can't read English newspapers.

( )1. "Sad" means "_____".

A. happy B. unhappy C. nice

( )2. _____ lost a cat.

A. Mrs Brown B. Mr Brown

C. Mrs Green

( )3. Mrs Green asks Mrs Brown to write something to _____.

A. Mrs Brown B. Mrs Green

C. the newspaper

( )4. _____ is silly.

A. Mrs Brown B. Mr Brown

C. Mrs Green

( )5. "She" in the last sentence(句子) refers to(指的是) _____.

A. Mrs Green B. Mrs Brown

C. the cat

## 八、阅读短文，判断句子正（T）误（F）。

Old Peter has a son. He always asks his son to study hard. But Little Peter often plays computer games after school. He never finishes his homework. One day, Old Peter got angry. He shouted at Little Peter, "Why are you so lazy? What will you be in the future?" Little Peter said, "I'm lazy because I'm your son. I'll be lazy because I'll always be your son!"

( )1. Old Peter asks his son to study hard.

( )2. Little Peter often finishes his homework after school.

( )3. Little Peter likes playing computer games.

( )4. Old Peter is very angry.

( )5. Little Peter is lazy. Because Old Peter is lazy too.

## 九、请你根据下面的信息介绍一下埃米和家人最喜欢的房间，并说一说他们喜欢的原因（至少五句话）。

**Amy**: study(read books)

**Ms Smart**: kitchen(cook)

**Mr Smart**: living room(watch TV)

**Sam**: bedroom(listen to music)

**Tom**: living room(play with toys)

_____

_____

_____

_____



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

# Module 9

## Unit 1 Best wishes to you! ☞(答案见111页)

一、读句子，根据字母提示写出正确的单词。

1. Best _____ (e,s,w,h,s,i) to you!
2. Good _____ (c,l,u,k) to you!
3. You are a _____ (t,g,r,e,a) friend.
4. I will _____ (s,m,s,i) you.
5. You brought us lots of _____ (o,y,j).
6. Good luck for the _____ (f,t,r,u,e,u)!
7. You're a _____ (o,w,e,r,d,n,f,u,l) friend.
8. I _____ (e,d,j,e,n,o,y) our time together.

二、将下列短语与正确的意思连线。

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. good luck | A. 小学 |
| 2. say goodbye | B. 最好的朋友 |
| 3. happy time | C. 好运 |
| 4. best friend | D. 写留言 |
| 5. primary school | E. 快乐的时光 |
| 6. write a message | F. 说再见 |

三、单项选择。

( )1. Sarah is 12 _____ old.
A. year B. age C. years

( )2. You taught _____ Chinese last week.
A. me B. our C. I

( )3. Can you bring some drinks _____ the party?
A. in B. of C. for

( )4. Good luck _____ the future!
A. of B. for C. on

( )5. Daming is a naughty _____ lovely boy.
A. but B. or C. that

( )6. We had a happy time _____ school.
A. on B. of C. at

四、选词填空。

keep message in say taught

1. Please write a _____ in this book.
2. I'll _____ it forever.
3. You _____ me Chinese.
4. We are going to _____ goodbye!
5. You helped me _____ sport.

五、读句子，判断句子与图片是(T)否(F)相符。

【分析判断法】

( )1. 

I'm going to say goodbye to my school.

( )2. 

She wrote me a message. It said, "I go to the supermarket."

( )3. 

He is a naughty boy.

( )4. 


He helped his friend in Chinese.

( )5. 

They are watching a basketball game.



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

## 六、选出错误的一项并在横线上改正。

( )1. He helped I in English.
A B C _____

( )2. Tom brought me lot of joy.
A B C _____

( )3. They enjoyed us time together.
A B C _____

( )4. Come to the UK to watching football
A B
games with me!
C _____

( )5. I wants to remember you all.
A B C _____

## 七、按要求完成句子。

1. We enjoy our time together.(改为一般过去时)

_____

2. my you friend are best (.)(连词成句)

_____

3. say Sam to goodbye going is (.)
(连词成句)

_____

4. Ms Smart teaches us English.
(改为一般过去时)

_____

5. You are a naughty boy. You are a clever boy.
(合成一句话)

_____

## 八、核心素养练

使用英语时,要根据正确的情景,选择恰当的句子。请你根据情景选一选。

( )1. 你跟朋友告别时,你会说:
A. I am going to say hello to you.
B. I am going to say goodbye to you.

( )2. 你想告诉妈妈你在学校玩得很开心,你会说:
A. I had a happy time at school.
B. I had a bad time at school.

( )3. 你想称赞王磊是个了不起的男孩,你会说:
A. Wang Lei is a naughty boy.
B. Wang Lei is a wonderful boy.

( )4. 你想告诉爸爸方芳在英语方面帮助了你,你应该说:
A. Fang Fang helped me in sport.
B. Fang Fang helped me in English.

( )5. 你想告诉朋友你不会忘记你们在一起的快乐时光,你应该说:
A. I'll never forget our time together.
B. I'll forget our time together.

## 九、阅读短文,判断句子正(T)误(F)。

Li Dan
Twelve years old
China

Dear Lin Hong,

You are a lovely girl. We are in the same class in the primary school. We always have a great time at school. You are my good friend. You always help me in English. Thank you very much. I will remember you forever. Good luck for the future!

Yours,
Li Dan

( )1. Li Dan is 13 years old.
( )2. They are in the same class in the primary school.
( )3. Lin Hong always helps Li Dan in English.
( )4. Li Dan won't remember Lin Hong forever.
( )5. Lin Hong is good at Maths.



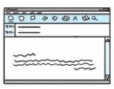
关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

# Unit 2 Wishing you happiness every day.

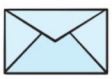
☞(答案见112页)

## 一、根据图片或字母提示补全句子。

1. I am writing an _____ to my friend. (m,e,a,i,l)



2. This _____is for Daming. (t,e,l,t,r,e)



3. We are going to say goodbye to our _____school soon. (r,y,p,m,a,i,r)



4. He had a good _____. (e,a,d,i)



5. Wishing you _____every day. (p,p,a,i,s,s,n,e,h)

## 二、选出不同类的单词。

( )1. A. great B. wish C. good

( )2. A. write B. joy C. enjoy

( )3. A. one B. first C. three

( )4. A. sending B. sing C. doing

( )5. A. from B. for C. future

## 三、核心素养练

在英语中,同一个意思,有时候可以用不同的词表达。

请你读下面的句子,选出画线部分的近义词。

A. lots of B. wonderful C. remember
D. wish E. had a lovely time

( )1. You are a good friend.

( )2. What a lot of good wishes!

( )3. I'll not forget you.

( )4. We enjoyed our time together.

( )5. I hope to go to a farm.

## 四、单项选择。

( )1. Now it's time to make a _____.
A. wishes B. wishing C. wish

( )2. The little child brought _____lots of joy.
A. we B. our C. us

( )3. Daming is _____an email to his father.
A. sending B. sent C. send

( )4. _____ a lot of beautiful flowers!
A. When B. What C. Why

( )5. I am writing goodbye letters _____ my friends.
A. in B. on C. to

( )6. What are you _____ in your letters?
A. write B. wrote C. writing

## 五、用所给词的适当形式填空。

1. I am _____ (write) a story now.

2. I miss _____ (they) very much.

3. _____ (one) I'll finish my homework, and then I'll clean my room.

4. There _____ (be) fifty books here.

5. They _____ (bring) us lots of joy last year.

## 六、读句子,选择合适的图片。

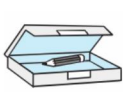
( )1. There are a lot of letters.

( )2. We live on the earth.

( )3. There is a pencil in the pencil case.

( )4. What a lovely girl!

( )5. The boy is writing goodbye letters to his friends.

A. 

B. 

C. 



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

D.  E. 

## 七、将下列句子排成一段完整的对话。

A. Yes, I am. What about you?

B. Me too. I hope we are in the same school.

C. Thank you! And best wishes to you!

D. I'm going to middle school, too. Good luck for the future!

E. I will miss you.

F. Are you going to middle school this September?

顺序依次为:

1. _____ → 2. _____ → 3. _____ →

4. _____ → 5. _____ → 6. _____

## 八、连词成句。

1. happiness wishing day every you (.)

_____

2. am writing I letters goodbye (.)

_____

3. she what first does write (?)

_____

4. write of the name a first I friend (.)

_____

5. good wishes lot a what of (!)

_____

## 九、选择正确的句子,补全对话。

【导学号 9723228】

**A**: Hi, Amy. 1. _____

**B**: I'm writing goodbye letters to all my friends at school.

**A**: 2. _____

**B**: First I write the name of a friend.

**A**: 3. _____

**B**: And then I write "Wishing you happiness every day" in every letter.

**A**: 4. _____

**B**: About forty letters.

**A**: 5. _____

**B**: Of course, I will.

A. How about then?

B. How many letters are you going to write?

C. What are you writing in your letters?

D. Will you miss them?

E. What are you doing now?

## 十、阅读短文,回答问题。

Lucy

12 years old

the US

Lingling,

I am going to say goodbye to you. I will miss you. Lingling, you are a beautiful and clever girl. You taught me Chinese. Thank you very much. I enjoyed our time together. I am going to America next month. Don't forget me. Please write a message in my book. I'll keep it forever. Best wishes to you!

Lucy

1. How old is Lucy?

_____

2. What did Lingling teach Lucy?

_____

3. Did Lucy enjoy the time with Lingling?

_____

4. Where is Lucy going?

_____



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

# Module 9 能力过关练 ☞(答案见112页)

## 听说专练

一、听录音，选出你所听到的单词。

听力训练

(　　)1. A. west　　B. best　　C. rest

(　　)2. A. goodbye　　B. buy　　C. bye-bye

(　　)3. A. November　　B. December　　C. remember

(　　)4. A. wonderful　　B. careful　　C. useful

(　　)5. A. basketball　　B. baseball　　C. football

二、听录音，判断句子与你所听到的内容是(T)否(F)一致。

(　　)1. We are going to say goodbye to our school.

(　　)2. Lily is five years old.

(　　)3. We had a happy time on the farm.

(　　)4. Come to China and visit the Great Wall.

(　　)5. I'm drawing a picture now.

三、听录音，根据录音内容选择恰当的答句。

(　　)1. A. She is writing a letter.
B. He is a worker.
C. I am writing a letter.

(　　)2. A. Here you are.
B. There are forty students.
C. In 2003.

(　　)3. A. Yes, I will.　　B. No, she won't.
C. Yes, she is.

(　　)4. A. I'm writing "Best wishes to you" in the letter.
B. Yes, I did.
C. What a lot of good wishes!

(　　)5. A. Goodbye, my friends.
B. Good luck to you!
C. Thank you.

四、听录音，根据录音内容填单词，补全句子。

1. _____ _____ to you!
2. Please write a _____ in this book.
3. I'll _____ it forever.
4. Good luck for the _____!
5. _____ a lot of good _____!
6. _____ you happiness _____ day.

五、朗读下面的一段留言。

口语测评

Daming
12 years old
China

Dear Amy,
You are a lovely and wonderful girl. We had a happy time at primary school. You taught me English. Thank you very much! Good luck for the future!
Daming

## 读写专练

六、读句子，选出与句子意思相符的图片。

(　　)1. She is going to say goodbye to her friend.

(　　)2. I am going to send a goodbye letter to my friend.

(　　)3. Look, there are many letters here.

(　　)4. You are a naughty but nice girl. You like playing basketball.

(　　)5. She helps me with my English homework.



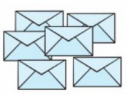
关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

(　　)6. You helped me in Chinese. I will never forget our time together.

A. 　B. 

C. 

　D. 

E. 　F. 

## 七、阅读短文，判断句子正（T）误（F）。

Dear Ms Smart,

We are going to say goodbye to you and our primary school. It's very lucky to be your students. Two years ago, I was very poor in English. You taught me English. And now I love English very much. You are a beautiful and kind teacher. I will miss you! And best wishes to you!

Xiaoyong

(　　)1. We are going to say goodbye to Ms Smart.

(　　)2. Ms Smart is a science teacher.

(　　)3. Xiaoyong doesn't like English now.

(　　)4. Ms Smart is a beautiful and kind teacher.

(　　)5. Xiaoyong will miss Tom.

## 八、阅读对话，根据对话内容选择正确答案。

**Dad**: What are you doing, Sam?

**Sam**: I am writing goodbye letters to my friends.

**Dad**: What are you writing in your letters?

**Sam**: Well, first I write the name of a friend. Look, this one is for Mike. He is going to America next week.

**Dad**: How many letters are you going to write?

**Sam**: I am going to write thirty letters.

**Dad**: And when will you give them your letters?

**Sam**: I will send the letters to them next week.

(　　)1. What is Sam doing?

A. He is listening to music.

B. He is writing goodbye letters.

C. He is drawing pictures.

(　　)2. What does he write first?

A. He writes a message.

B. He writes the letters.

C. He writes the name of his friend.

(　　)3. Where is Mike going?

A. He's going to China.

B. He's going to England.

C. He's going to America.

(　　)4. When will Mike go?

A. Tomorrow.　　B. Next week.

C. Next month.

(　　)5. How many letters is Sam going to send?

A. 30.　　B. 40.　　C. 50.

## 九、小学就要毕业了，你和你的好朋友一定有很多美好的回忆吧，赶快把你想说的话写到信中送给他（她）吧(至少五句话)！

Dear _____,

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

Yours,

_____



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

# Module 10

## Unit 1 We're going to different schools. ☞(答案见112页)

一、给下列单词分类，将序号填在横线上。

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ①China | ②leave | ③June | ④Maths |
| ⑤excited | ⑥USA | ⑦History | ⑧July |
| ⑨sad | ⑩September | ⑪Geography | ⑫UK |
| ⑬speak | ⑭happy | ⑮practise | |

1. 月份：_____

2. 课程：_____

3. 情绪：_____

4. 动作：_____

5. 国家：_____

二、单项选择。

( )1. A goodbye speech _____ Lingling.
A. in B. by C. at

( )2. I am excited and _____ sad.
A. to B. too C. also

( )3. I am excited _____ we are going to learn new things in middle school.
A. but B. so C. because

( )4. _____ the same time, I am very sad to say goodbye to you.
A. In B. At C. On

( )5. You won the game. I am happy _____ you.
A. of B. for C. at

( )6. Four years ago, Amy _____ only very little Chinese.
A. spoke B. speak C. told

( )7. She is going to _____ our primary school.
A. leave B. leaves C. leaving

( )8. Keep on _____ Chinese in the UK.
A. practises B. practise
C. practising

三、读句子，用所给词的适当形式填空。

1. You are a wonderful friend. I will come back to _____ (Chinese) sometime.

2. I got three _____ (email) from my penfriends last week.

3. Keep on _____ (read) English in the morning. It's good for your English study.

4. She _____ (speak) little English last year.

5. We are _____ (go) to meet new friends in middle school.

6. We are going to different _____ (school).

四、看图片，选择与图片对应的句子。

【导学号 9723228】

( )1. 

A. I'm going to a primary school.
B. I'm going to a middle school.

( )2. 

A. We are going to start middle school this September.
B. We are going to leave our primary school this July.



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

( )3. 


A. I am going to study History.

B. I am going to study Geography.

( )4. 

A. I am very sad to say goodbye to my friends.

B. I am very happy to say hello to my friends.

( )5. 

A. They are going back to the UK.

B. They are going back to the USA.

## 五、按要求完成句子。

1. Lingling is going to study Geography.
(对画线部分提问)

_____ is Lingling _____ to _____?

2. She is going to middle school in September.
(改为一般疑问句)

_____ _____ _____ _____ middle school in September?

3. We are going to the zoo next week.
(改为同义句)

We _____ _____ to the zoo next week.

4. I will go to school by bus. (对画线部分提问)

_____ _____ _____ go to school?

5. I'm excited because I will study new things in middle school. (对画线部分提问)

_____ _____ _____excited?

## 六、核心素养练

生活中多运用英语与他人进行交流,可以提高我们的口语交际能力。

请你结合图片提示,回答问题。

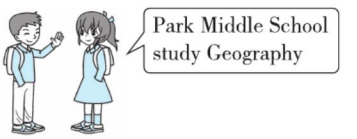
1. 


Where are you going this summer?

_____

What are you going to do?

_____

2. 


Where are you going this September?

_____

What are you going to do?

_____

## 七、阅读短文,判断句子正(T)误(F)。

My name is Liu Ying. I am going to leave primary school soon. I am going to say goodbye to my teachers and classmates. I am going to Huaying Middle School. I'm excited and also sad. Four years ago, I spoke little English. Now I can speak a lot more. I am going to study lots of new things in middle school. I am going to meet new friends there. But my best friend Lin Hong is going to Siyuan Middle School. I will miss her.

( )1. Liu Ying is going to Siyuan Middle School.

( )2. Liu Ying and Lin Hong are good friends.

( )3. Lin Hong is going to Huaying Middle School.

( )4. Liu Ying can speak English now.

( )5. Liu Ying is sad because her friend will leave her.



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

# Unit 2 What are you going to study?

☞(答案见 112 页)

## 一、核心素养练

进入初中,我们要学习的课程会增加。

请你根据图片和字母提示,完成初中所学科目的单词字谜。(只填大写字母)

1. 

2. 

3. 

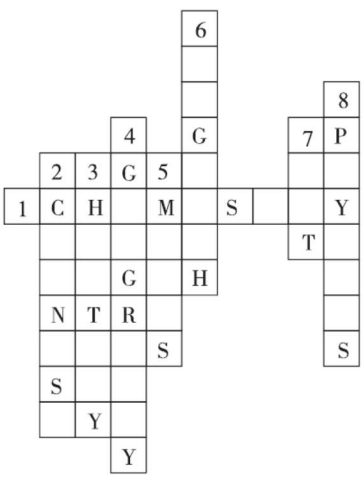
4. 

5. 

6. 

7. 

8. 


## 二、找出不同类的单词。

( )1. A. September B. Monday C. October

( )2. A. subject B. French C. English

( )3. A. excited B. sad C. happily

( )4. A. Chemistry B. learn C. Geography

( )5. A. study B. always C. sometimes

## 三、单项选择。

( )1. I _____ going to middle school soon.

A. am B. is C. are

( )2. What are you going to _____?

A. learning B. study C. studied

( )3. _____ Tom going back to the UK?

A. Am B. Is C. Are

( )4. _____ middle school are you going to?

A. Where B. Who C. Which

( )5. —How _____ you go to school?

—I'll go to school by bike.

A. are B. will C. is

( )6. We can write _____ English.

A. in B. on C. with

## 四、萨姆和大明要升入初中,进入不同的学校。请你阅读下面的对话,选择恰当的句子将对话补充完整。

**Sam**: Are you going to middle school this September?

**Daming**: 1. _____

**Sam**: 2. _____

**Daming**: I'm going to study Physics, Chemistry, History. What about you?

**Sam**: 3. _____

**Daming**: You will go home. I am happy for you. But how can I practise English?

**Sam**: 4. _____

**Daming**: I'll miss you.

**Sam**: 5. _____

A. I will miss you, too.

B. What are you going to study?

C. Yes, I am.

D. We can write lots of emails.

E. I am going to a new school in England.

## 五、按要求完成句子。

1. We are going to study French, Chemistry and Physics. (对画线部分提问)

_____



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

2. He is going to school by bus.
（对画线部分提问）

_____

3. Lingling is going to study in middle school.
（改为一般疑问句）

_____

4. Are you going to middle school this September?
（作肯定回答）

_____

5. French am to I study going not (.)
（连词成句）

_____

## 六、阅读短文，根据首字母提示填单词。

American schools begin in 1. S_____. There are two terms in a school year. The 2. f_____ term is from September to January, and the second term is 3. f_____ February to June. Most American children begin to go to school when they are five years old. Most school students are seventeen or eighteen years old when they finish 4. m_____ school. Most school students have four or five 5. s_____ each term. After class they do many interesting things.

## 七、阅读短文，选择正确答案。

Hello, I'm Lingling. This summer holiday, I have a plan. I'm going to Beijing with my parents and we are going to visit some places. We are going to climb the Great Wall and see a film about Beijing. My parents are going to buy some postcards and take lots of photos. I'm going to meet my penfriend in a restaurant. I think my holiday will be interesting!

(　　)1. Where is Lingling going?
A. She is going to Beijing.
B. She is going to Shanghai.
C. She is going to Guangzhou.

(　　)2. Are they going to climb the Great Wall?
A. Yes, they are.　B. No, they aren't.
C. We don't know.

(　　)3. What are Lingling's parents going to buy?
A. They are going to buy some stamps.
B. They are going to buy some postcards.
C. They are going to buy some books.

(　　)4. Are Lingling's parents going to take photos?
A. Yes, they are.　B. No, they aren't.
C. We don't know.

(　　)5. Where is Lingling going to meet her penfriend?
A. In a library.　B. In a restaurant.
C. In a park.

## 八、看图片，根据图意补全句子。

1. 
2. 
3. 
4. 
5. 

This summer holiday, I have a plan.

1. I'm going to _____.
2. In the morning, I'm going to _____.
3. In the afternoon, I'm going to _____.
4. In the evening, I'm going to _____.
5. And I'm going to _____at ten o'clock.

I think my holiday will be interesting.



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

# Module 10 能力过关练 ☞(答案见113页)

## 听说专练

一、听录音，选出你所听到的单词。

听力训练

( )1. A. September B. December C. October

( )2. A. model B. middle C. bottle

( )3. A. learn B. carry C. History

( )4. A. read B. speak C. learn

( )5. A. never B. always C. sometimes

二、听录音，根据录音内容排序。







( ) ( ) ( )





( ) ( )

三、听录音，根据对话内容连线。

1. Sam A. 


2. Tom B. 


3. Amy C. 


4. Lily D. 


5. Jim E. 


四、听录音，判断下列句子与所听内容是（T）否（F）相符。

( )1. Daming is going to primary school this September.

( )2. Daming is very sad.

( )3. Daming is going to study Physics.

( )4. Sam and Amy are going back to the UK.

( )5. Daming will write letters to Sam and Amy.

五、看图片，仿照例句说句子。

口语测评

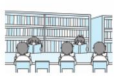
例：




(I)

I am going to middle school.

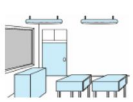
I am going to study Physics.

1. 


(he)

2. 


(they)

3. 


(she)

4. 



(I)



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

## 读写专练

六、读句子，选择相应的图片。

( )1. My sister is practising English.

( )2. I'm going to study Geography in middle school.

( )3. He is going to ride his bike to school.

( )4. My friend Sam is going back to the UK.

( )5. He is going to study Chemistry.

( )6. It's time to say goodbye.



A



B




C



D



E




F

七、阅读短文，根据短文内容判断句子正（T）误（F）。

Wang Juan is 12 years old. She is going to Park Middle School. It is in Wuhan. It's near the East Lake. It's very beautiful. She is going to school by bus. She will go to school at seven every day. She will go home at five. She will study History, Science, Geography and Chinese. She likes History best.

( )1. Park Middle School is in Wuhan.

( )2. Park Middle School is near the East Lake.

( )3. Wang Juan will go to school by bike.

( )4. She will go to school at six every day.

( )5. She likes Science best.

八、阅读短文，根据短文内容选择正确答案。

Mike is going to a new middle school. He is very excited. And his friend Jack is going to middle school too. They are going to write emails to each other. Jack is going to study Chinese, Maths, History and Physics. But Mike is going to study Geography, Chemistry and Science. Mike's home is near the middle school. So he is going to walk to school. But Jack's home is far from school. So he is going to school by bus.

( )1. Mike is going to a new _____ school.

A. primary B. middle C. high

( )2. Mike is very _____.

A. angry B. sad C. excited

( )3. Mike and Jack will _____ to each other.

A. write letters B. write emails C. call

( )4. _____ is going to study Geography, Chemistry and Science.

A. Mike B. Jack C. Tom

( )5. Mike is going to school _____.

A. on foot B. by bike C. by bus

九、小学即将毕业，九月份要上中学了，你的心情怎样？你要去哪所中学读书？你打算怎样上学？你知道中学什么时候上学，什么时候回家吗？你知道中学要学哪些科目吗？请将你的打算写一写吧(至少五句话)！

_____

_____

_____

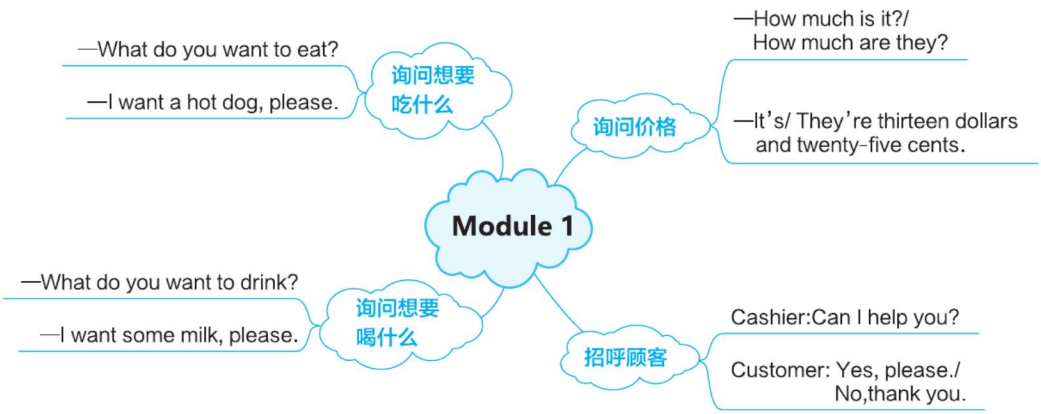
_____



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

# 期末复习训练 » Module 1 复习训练

## 知识导图




**本模块重难点、易错点提醒**

1. 营业员或服务员招呼顾客的常用语：Can I help you?
2. want是“想要”的意思，常用句型：
   ①主语+want+某物 表示“某人想要某物”。
   ②主语+want+to+动词原形 表示“某人想要做某事”。
3. 询问物品价格：
   How much+is+可数名词单数或不可数名词?
   How much + are+可数名词复数?
4. 货币单位*yuan*没有复数形式，货币单位dollar和cent有单复数形式变化。

## 重难点过关检测 ☞(答案见 113 页)

### 词汇过关

一、读一读，根据所给的单词写出两个同类词。

1. meat　chicken　_____　_____
2. *yuan*　*fen*　_____　_____
3. apple　orange　_____　_____
4. bread　cake　_____　_____
5. juice　tea　_____　_____
6. teacher　doctor　_____　_____

二、下面选项中的字母，按正确顺序排列后就形成了本模块的重点单词，请你读一读句子，根据句意把正确的单词用其恰当的形式写到横线上。

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. r e f c a l u | 2. k o l o s |
| 3. j o e n y | 4. a n t w |
| 5. d a r l l o | s e n t c |

1. The soup is hot. Be _____.
2. Look at the hamburger. It _____ good.
3. Dinner is ready. Please _____your meal.
4. I _____ a hot dog,please.
5. The juice is cheap. It's only one _____and two _____.



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

## 句型语法过关

三、选择合适的单词填空。

for　to　and　with

1. I want a hamburger _____some cheese.

2. Danny wants _____ drink a cola.

3. Sam wants noodles _____ a hot dog.

4. Three hamburgers _____me, please.

四、找出句子中括号里正确的单词，将序号填入题前括号里。

(　　)1. How much _____(A. is　B. are) they?

(　　)2. Lisa _____(A. want　B. wants) a dog.

(　　)3. Can you help _____(A. us　B. we )?

(　　)4. What do you want _____(A. for　B. to) drink?

(　　)5. It's five _____(A. dollar　B. dollars).

(　　)6. Enjoy _____(A. you　B. your) meal!

(　　)7. Three _____(A. cola　B. colas) for me, please.

(　　)8. The hat _____(A. look　B. looks) beautiful.

五、读句子，选出对应的答语。

(　　)1. What's a cola?

(　　)2. Is it your dog?

(　　)3. What do you want to eat?

(　　)4. How much is it?

(　　)5. Do you like grapes?

(　　)6. What do you want to drink?

A. It's eight dollars.　B. I want a cake.
C. A cup of tea, please.　D. It's a kind of drink.
E. Yes, I do.　F. No, it isn't.

## 综合运用过关

六、读一读，选择正确的句子补全对话。

**A**: Good morning. Can I help you?

**B**: 1. _____

**A**: 2. _____

**B**: I want two eggs and a hot dog, please.

**A**: OK. 3. _____

**B**: A glass of orange juice, please.

**A**: Just a moment, please.

**B**: 4. _____

**A**: It's twelve *yuan*.

**B**: 5. _____

**A**: Thank you.

A. What do you want to drink?
B. How much is it?
C. What do you want to eat?
D. Here you are.
E. Yes, please.

七、阅读对话，根据对话内容，猜一猜食品价格（注意每个人的钱都没有剩余）。

**Mike**: I have eight dollars. I want a hamburger and a glass of orange juice.

**Tom**: I have twelve dollars. I want two hamburgers and a cup of tea.

**Lingling**: I have nine dollars. I want fish and rice.

**Amy**: I have seven dollars. I want some noodles.

**Menu**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Hamburger | $ | 5.00 | Juice | $ | _____ |
| Tea | $ | _____ | Fish | $ | _____ |
| Rice | $ | 1.00 | Noodles | $ | _____ |



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

# Module 2 复习训练

## 知识导图




**本模块重难点、易错点提醒**

1. be going to是一般将来时的一种表现形式，表示将要或打算做某事，be动词随人称变化。
2. will是"将要"的意思，表示某地将会是怎样的天气，常用句型有：
   ①It will+表示天气的动词+in+某地. ②It will be +表示天气的形容词+in+某地.
3. when意为"什么时候"；what time 一般询问具体时间。

## 重难点过关检测 ☞(答案见 113 页)

### 词汇过关

一、读一读，找出每组中不同类的单词并在横线上换一个同类词。

( )1. A. what B. when C. eat _____

( )2. A. sandwich B. breakfast C. dinner _____

( )3. A. fish B. park C. goose _____

( )4. A. rainy B. play C. cloudy _____

( )5. A. happy B. stay C. naughty _____

( )6. A. eleven B. past C. twelve _____

二、读句子，选择恰当的词填空。

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| windy | dry | past |
| pond | look like | |

1. Look at that duck. It's swimming on the _____.
2. We're going to play ping-pong at half _____ three.
3. It will be _____ tomorrow. Let's fly kites in the park.
4. I am her daughter. I _____ her.
5. The playground is _____. Let's sit down and play a game.



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

## 句型语法过关

三、单项选择。

( )1. It _____ in Shanxi yesterday.
A. snowed B. will snow
C. will be snowy

( )2. We are going to eat _____ ten o'clock.
A. in B. on C. at

( )3. It's _____ beautiful day.
A. a B. an C. the

( )4. Let's _____ to school.
A. going B. go C. goes

( )5. _____ ducks are very naughty.
A. This B. These C. That

四、用所给单词的正确形式填空。

1. He is going to _____(buy) some food with his sister.
2. What _____(be) he going to do?
3. They are _____(do) homework now.
4. It's going to be _____(snow) tomorrow.
5. When are you going to _____(play) chess?

五、按要求写句子。

1. She is going to have a picnic this weekend.
(对画线部分提问)

_____

2. Simon is going to play chess.
(对画线部分提问)

_____

3. It will be warm in Guangzhou. It will be sunny in Guangzhou. (合成一句话)

_____

4. I am going to have lunch at twelve.
(对画线部分提问)

_____

六、读句子，选出对应的问句。

( )1. It's sixty dollars.
( )2. I'm going to play basketball.
( )3. It's going to rain in Shanghai.
( )4. It's half past twelve.
( )5. We are going to eat at six.

A. What time is it?
B. What are you going to do?
C. When are you going to eat?
D. How much is it?
E. What's the weather like in Shanghai?

## 综合运用过关

七、阅读短文，选择正确的答案。

The winter vacation is coming soon. The students in Class Three are talking about their winter vacations. Peter is going back to America because he wants to visit his parents. Liu Xing is going to Harbin because his uncle lives there. He is going to visit him. Cindy is going to learn to dance during the winter vacation. Lucy and Lily are twins. They are going to Beijing with their parents. There are many places of interest(名胜古迹) in Beijing, such as the Summer Palace and the Palace Museum. Everyone has a good plan.

( )1. Peter is going back to _____.
A. Australia B. America C. England

( )2. Cindy is going to learn to _____.
A. sing B. swim C. dance

( )3. _____ and Lily are twins.
A. Lucy B. Cindy C. Linda

( )4. Liu Xing is going to visit his _____ in Harbin.
A. parents B. uncle C. friend

( )5. The twins are going to Beijing with their _____.
A. friends B. classmates C. parents



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

# Module 3 复习训练

## 知识导图




**本模块重难点、易错点提醒**

1. 现在进行时表示现在或现阶段正在发生或进行的动作。注意：be动词必须和主语保持一致。
2. 动词的-ing形式的变化规则：
   ①一般情况，直接在动词词尾加-ing。
   ②以不发音字母-e结尾的动词，先去掉e，再加-ing。
   ③以重读闭音节结尾的动词且末尾只有一个辅音字母，要双写最后的辅音字母，再加-ing。
   ④以-ie结尾的动词，先改ie为y，再加-ing。

## 重难点过关检测 ☞(答案见113页)

### 词汇过关

一、读一读，找出每组中不同类的单词。

(　　)1. A. shine　B. blow　C. Sunday
(　　)2. A. blowing　B. rain　C. snow
(　　)3. A. car　B. park　C. just
(　　)4. A. crying　B. miss　C. flying
(　　)5. A. now　B. rabbit　C. cow
(　　)6. A. lovely　B. everyone　C. interesting

二、读句子，选择恰当的单词填空。(填序号)

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| A. windy | B. wind | C. rabbit |
| D. everyone | E. cow | F. playing |
| G. crying | H. running | |

1. The _____ is blowing now.
2. It's _____ and cold.
3. The _____ has two long ears and red eyes.
4. The _____ is eating grass.
5. Tom is _____ a game now.
6. The little girl is _____. She can run fast.
7. I miss _____ in Beijing.
8. The baby is _____. Why does she feel sad?

### 句型语法过关

三、单项选择。

(　　)1. Look at these _____.
A. photo　B. photos　C. photoes

(　　)2. It _____ raining. The sun is shining.
A. is　B. not　C. isn't



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

( )3. Amy had _____ interesting day on Friday.
A. a B. an C. /

( )4. We are _____ a picnic in the park.
A. had B. have C. having

( )5. Now the train is _____ to the station.
A. come B. coming C. comes

( )6. _____ the photo, _____ sun is shining.
A. On; a B. On; the C. In; the

## 四、用所给单词的正确形式填空。

1. What _____ (be) you doing?
2. The wind _____ (be) blowing now.
3. The cows _____ (be) drinking water.
4. The dog is _____ (sleep).
5. The rabbits are _____ (jump).
6. I am _____ (clean) my bedroom.
7. What _____ (be) Sam doing now?

## 五、读句子，根据答语找出对应的问句。

( )1. He is in the living room.
( )2. I'm going to play chess.
( )3. It's sunny.
( )4. It's running.
( )5. We are singing.
( )6. We had a picnic.

A. What is the dog doing?
B. What are you doing?
C. Where is Sam?
D. What are you going to do?
E. What did you do last weekend?
F. What's the weather like in Beijing?

# 综合运用过关

## 六、按要求完成句子。

1. We are playing games. We are in the park. (合成一句话)

_____

2. The boy reads a book. (用 now 改写句子)

_____

3. The birds are singing in the tree. (对画线部分提问)

_____

4. The duck is swimming. (变复数句)

_____

5. shining the is sun sky in the (.) (连词成句)

_____

## 七、阅读短文，判断句子正 (T) 误 (F)。

It's Sunday morning. The students of Class 3 are cleaning their classroom. Miss Huang is their teacher. She is working with them. The students are busy. Some are carrying water. Some are cleaning the window. Others (其他人) are sweeping the floor. Zhang Hua is putting up a map on the wall. It's a map of China. Wang Fei and Wang Qing are mending (修理) some broken chairs. The students are listening to music while (当……的时候) they are working. They are very happy.

( )1. The students are playing in their classroom on Sunday morning.
( )2. Miss Huang is working with her students.
( )3. A student is putting up a map of China on the wall.
( )4. Two of them are repairing (修理) the broken chairs.
( )5. They are singing while they are working.



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

# Module 4 复习训练

## 知识导图




**本模块重难点、易错点提醒**

1. can是情态动词，意为“能，会”，没有人称和数的变化，后面接动词原形。
2. 描述物品现在的状态，用现在进行时，be动词随主语人称和数的变化而变化。

## 重难点过关检测 ☞(答案见114页)

### 词汇过关

一、读一读，找出每组中不同类的单词。

( )1. A. balloon B. ball C. carry

( )2. A. falling B. buy C. flying

( )3. A. phone B. box C. radio

( )4. A. where B. mess C. who

( )5. A. help B. me C. us

( )6. A. lovely B. everyone C. everything

### 句型语法过关

二、单项选择。

( )1. —_____ is the email from?

—It's from China.

A. Who B. What C. Where

( )2. —Can you carry the bag?

—Sorry. I _____ carry the bag.

A. can't B. can C. don't

( )3. I'm _____ a birthday card.

A. make B. made C. making

( )4. Look! Lucy is _____ a new bike now.

A. jumping B. running C. riding

( )5. Listen! The boys _____ singing.

A. is B. am C. are

( )6. We _____ sing and dance.

A. are B. can C. having

( )7. The kite is _____.

A. fly B. fly away

C. flying away

( )8. The orange _____ falling.

A. is B. am C. are



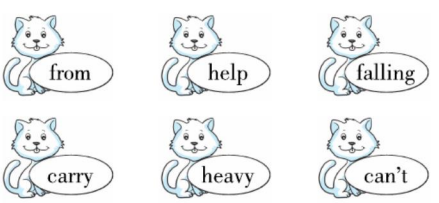
关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

三、用所给单词的正确形式填空。

1. The balloons are _____(fly) away.
2. Where _____(be) your cat?
3. The apples _____(be) falling down the stairs.
4. That chair _____(be) broken.
5. I can _____(swimming).
6. The rabbits can _____(jumping).
7. The dog can't _____(flying).
8. Tom can't _____(carrying) the heavy box.

## 综合运用过关

四、阅读对话，选词填空。




**Amy**: Hi, Simon. What are you doing?

**Simon**: The books are 1. _____ ! Who can help me? I 2. _____ carry all the books. They are too 3. _____.

**Amy**: I can 4. _____ you. I can 5. _____ some of the books.

**Simon**: Oh, Amy! Thank you! I am going to return the books. They are 6. _____ the school library.

五、选择合适的句子补全对话。

**Kim**: 1. _____

**Lingling**: She is buying things at the supermarket.

**Kim**: Are you going to have a birthday party?

**Lingling**: 2. _____ My mother is buying things for me.

**Kim**: What do you want?

**Lingling**: 3. _____

**Kim**: Can she carry everything?

**Lingling**: 4. _____ Let's go and help her.

**Kim**: OK. Take your bag with you.

**Lingling**: 5. _____

A. No, she can't.
B. Where is your mother?
C. Thank you.
D. Yes, I am.
E. I want a big birthday cake and some balloons.

六、阅读短文，判断句子正（T）误（F）。

【导学号 9723228】

Simon is standing on the chair. He's putting up a piece of paper with "Happy Birthday!" on the wall. Daming is walking into the room. He is carrying a heavy box. Simon's mum is in the kitchen. She is making a birthday cake for Daming. Lingling is making some flowers. Amy is going out of the room. She is going to the supermarket to buy some vegetables. Some other children are sitting on the sofa, watching TV. Today, they are going to have a birthday party for Daming.

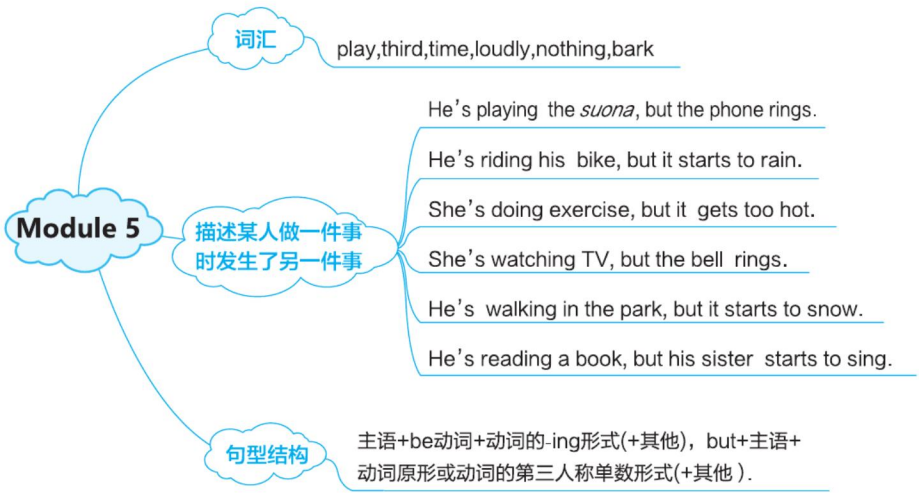
(　　)1. Today is Daming's birthday.
(　　)2. Simon is sitting on the chair.
(　　)3. Daming is carrying a heavy box.
(　　)4. Lingling is watering the flowers.
(　　)5. Amy is going to buy some vegetables.



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

# Module 5 复习训练

## 知识导图




**本模块重难点、易错点提醒**

1. 描述正在做某件事时，发生了另一件事。句型中前半句时态为现在进行时，后半句时态为一般现在时。but意为"但是"，表示转折。
   句型结构为：主语+be+动词的-ing形式(+其他)，but+主语+动词原形/动词的第三人称单数形式(+其他)。
2. play的用法：①"play +the+乐器名称"表示"弹奏某种乐器"，中间必须有the；
   ②"play+球类"表示"玩某种球"，中间不能加the。

## 重难点过关检测 ☞(答案见 114 页)

### 词汇过关

一、读一读，找出每组中不同类的单词。

( )1. A. *suona* B. piano C. phone
( )2. A. play B. wait C. having
( )3. A. third B. two C. first
( )4. A. rain B. snow C. but
( )5. A. starts B. say C. knows

二、读句子，选择恰当的单词填空。

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| comes | barking | playing |
| nothing | hear | third |
| time | says | but |

1. "Sit down, please," Daming _____.
2. My mother _____into my room.
3. Those dogs are _____ loudly.
4. Amy is _____ the piano.
5. Tom is reading a book, _____Sam starts to sing a song.
6. There is _____in the schoolbag. It's empty.
7. Can you _____ me?
8. He is making a cake for the _____ _____.

### 句型语法过关

三、单项选择。

( ) 1. They are very happy, _____ we are not.
A. and B. but C. so



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

( )2. Sam is playing _____ football, and Lisa is playing _____ *erhu*.
A. the; the B. a; a C. /; the

( )3. The dog _____ barking.
A. stop B. stopping C. stops

( )4. I can't hear you. Please speak very _____.
A. louder B. loudly C. lower

( )5. Little Jack is crying, but his mother _____ nothing.
A. know B. knows C. knowing

## 四、用所给单词的正确形式填空。

1. They are _____ (have) a picnic, but it starts to _____ (rainy).
2. He is _____ (cross) the street, but a car _____ (come).
3. She is _____ (watch) TV, but the bell _____ (ring).
4. Daming _____ (stop) and everyone _____ (wait).
5. "Stop!" Simon _____ (say).
6. His friends can't hear _____ (he).

## 五、按要求完成句子。

1. My friend can hear me. (改为否定句)

_____

2. Daming is playing the *suona*.
(对画线部分提问)

_____

3. My mum is washing clothes. The phone rings.
(用 but 连成一句话)

_____

4. for the third she piano played the time (.) (连词成句)

_____

5. music Tom to cries am loudly listening I but (,.) (连词成句)

_____

## 综合运用过关

## 六、阅读对话，选择合适的选项补全对话。

**Sam**: Amy, where are you? It's so noisy. 1. _____

**Amy**: I am having a party with my friends. We are going to have a picnic in the park, 2. _____ Then we decide (决定) to stay at home and have fun together. Tom and John are at the party, too. 3. _____ And John is playing chess with Lisa. 4. _____

**Sam**: That sounds nice. I'll be there in thirty minutes.

A. Would you like to join us?
B. Tom is dancing to the music.
C. but it starts to rain.
D. I can't hear you.

## 七、阅读短文，判断句子正 (T) 误 (F)。

Simon is having a birthday party. His friends, John, Daming, Mike and Bob, come into his house. Look! John is taking photos. Daming is playing the *suona*. Mike is drawing pictures. Bob is playing the piano. Simon's dad is cooking. Simon's mum is making orange juice. Simon's dog is barking. They are happy.

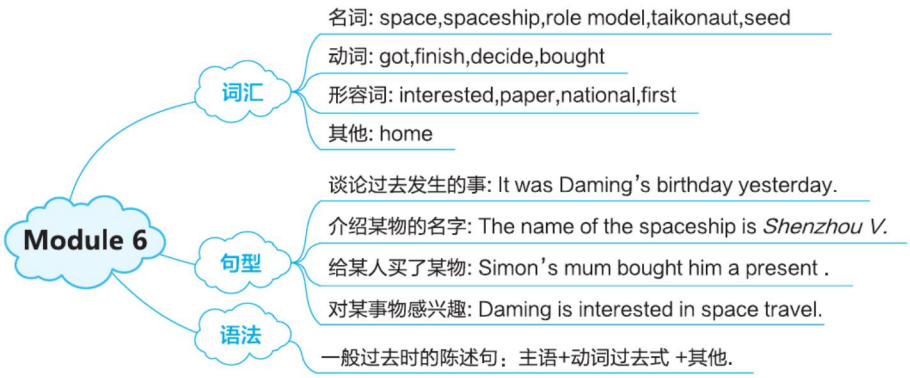
( )1. Simon is having a birthday party.
( )2. John is talking to his friends.
( )3. Daming is playing the *suona*.
( )4. Mike is playing the piano.
( )5. Simon's mum is making orange juice.



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

# Module 6 复习训练

## 知识导图




**本模块重难点、易错点提醒**

1. 表示“给某人买某物”可以用“buy sb. sth.”或者“buy sth. for sb.”。
2. be interested in表示“对……感兴趣”。
3. 动词过去式的变化规则：
   ①一般情况下，在动词原形后直接加ed。如：want—wanted想要
   ②以不发音的字母e结尾的动词，直接加d。如：hope—hoped希望
   ③以一个辅音字母结尾的重读闭音节单词需双写最后一个辅音字母，再加ed。如：stop—stopped停止
   ④以辅音字母+y结尾的动词变y为i，再加ed。如：study—studied学习
   ⑤有些动词不符合上面的规则，需要特殊记忆。如：go—went去,eat—ate吃
4. 名词所有格表示一种所属关系：名词后加's一般表示有生命的，of加名词，一般表示无生命的。

## 重难点过关检测 ☞(答案见 114 页)

### 词汇过关

一、读一读，找出每组中不同类的单词。

( )1. A. paper B. earth C. sun
( )2. A. bought B. brought C. learn
( )3. A. Chinese B. Russia C. US
( )4. A. three B. two C. first
( )5. A. decided B. space C. finished
( )6. A. happy B. beautiful C. model
( )7. A. with B. about C. gave
( )8. A. him B. us C. your

二、读句子，用方框中单词的正确形式填空。

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ask | buy | learn | decide |
| is | interest | get | take |

1. —What did you buy on the earth?
   —I _____ a lot of things.
2. It _____ Daming's birthday yesterday.
3. He _____ a toy car from his father yesterday.
4. Amy is _____ in the piano.
5. Tom was reading a book. He _____ a lot from the book.
6. I _____ to do my homework first.
7. I _____ him to watch a film with me.
8. The spaceship _____ us to the earth.



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

## 句型语法过关

三、选择恰当的单词填空。

1. Lingling asked _____ (she/her) to read the story.
2. I _____ (thanks/thanked) him for the birthday present yesterday.
3. I bought a T-shirt _____ (for/to) you.
4. He got a new bike _____ (with/from) his dad.
5. She has a new book _____ (for/about) English.
6. The name _____ (of/with) the dog is Doudou.
7. I went there for the _____ (one/first) time.
8. My father took me _____ (to/for) school by car.

四、按要求完成句子。

1. My friend bought me a book. (改为同义句)

_____

2. Daming made a model of a spaceship. (对画线部分提问)

_____

3. The bus takes us to school. (改为一般过去时)

_____

4. was interested too Simon book in the (.) (连词成句)

_____

5. Did you buy me a pen? (作肯定回答)

_____

## 综合运用过关

五、选择合适的句子补全对话。

**Daming**: This book is interesting.

**Sam**: What's it about?

**Daming**: 1. _____

**Sam**: 2. _____

**Daming**: My mum gave it to me. It's my birthday present.

**Sam**: Great! What did your dad buy for you?

**Daming**: 3. _____

**Sam**: Then we can play together.

**Daming**: 4. _____

A. He bought a football for me.
B. Yes, let's go.
C. Who gave it to you?
D. It's about animals.

六、阅读短文，选择正确答案。

I had a dream last night. I was a taikonaut. Peter was in my dream. He was a taikonaut too. We were in a spaceship. We saw many stars in space. We went to Mars (火星). Mars was very cold. There was no water. And there were no trees. But there were Martians (火星人). The Martians were very friendly. We became friends and played games. We had a lovely time.

( )1. Last night I had _____.
A. a spaceship B. a dream
C. a present

( )2. It was very _____ on Mars.
A. hot B. cool C. cold

( )3. There were/was _____ on Mars.
A. Martians B. trees C. water

( )4. The Martians were _____.
A. tall B. proud C. friendly

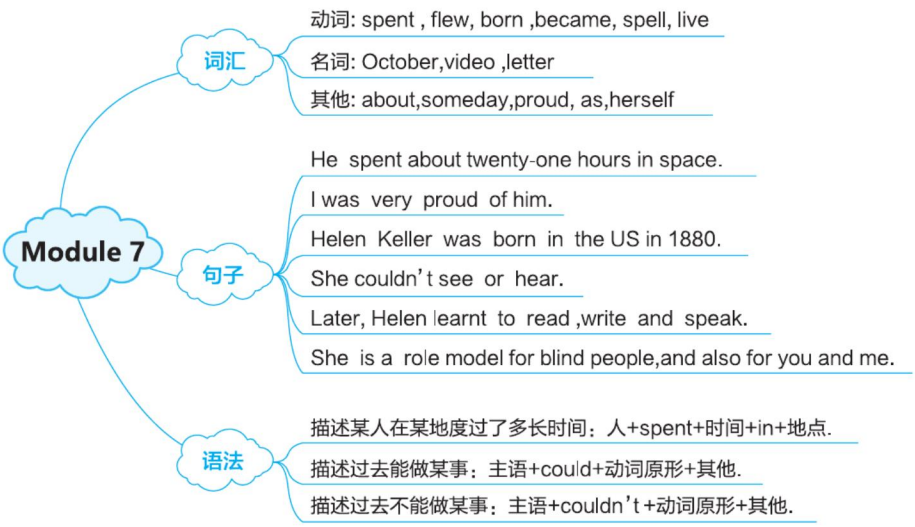
( )5. We _____ with the Martians.
A. played baseball
B. played games
C. played chess



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

# Module 7 复习训练

## 知识导图




**本模块重难点、易错点提醒**

1. 连词and和but用法：and表示并列、顺承、结果、重复等，but表示转折。
2. be proud of表示“为……而自豪”，of后面可以接人，也可以接物。注意：如果接人称代词，要用其宾格形式。

## 重难点过关检测 ☞(答案见114页)

### 词汇过关

一、读一读，找出与所给单词同类的单词。

( )1. spaceship
A. plane B. space C. model

( )2. spent
A. earth B. airport C. learnt

( )3. October
A. twenty B. July C. US

( )4. herself
A. I B. my C. myself

( )5. proud
A. China B. video C. quiet

( )6. become
A. happy B. famous C. live

( )7. hear
A. her B. see C. ear

二、读句子，用方框中单词的正确形式填空。

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| fly | spend | write | go |
| become | draw | tell | can |

1. Helen _____ a book about herself many years ago.
2. She _____ blind two years ago.
3. He _____ into space in *Shenzhou V* in October 2003.
4. Amy _____ three hours playing the piano yesterday.
5. Tom was reading a book. He _____ read and write when he was five.



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

6. I _____ to the airport yesterday.

7. I _____ him about Yang Liwei.

8. The girl can _____ pictures.

## 句型语法过关

三、单项选择。

(　　)1. Look at this spaceship. It's our _____ spaceship.

A. first　　B. a　　C. one

(　　)2. I am very _____ Yang Liwei.

A. proud　　B. proud to　　C. proud of

(　　)3. Helen is a role model _____ blind people.

A. with　　B. for　　C. at

(　　)4. They learnt _____ sing and dance.

A. to　　B. for　　C. at

(　　)5. It was dark. We _____ see anything.

A. can　　B. could　　C. couldn't

(　　)6. Confucius _____ be seventy-two.

A. lived to　　B. lived　　C. lived for

四、找出下列句子的正确答语。

(　　)1. Who's he?

(　　)2. What's his name?

(　　)3. When was he born?

(　　)4. Was he a doctor?

(　　)5. Did he have many students?

(　　)6. How old was he?

A. He lived to be seventy-two.
B. Yes. He had many students.
C. He was born in 551 BC.
D. His name is Confucius.
E. He is a famous person.
F. No. He was a great teacher.

五、按要求完成句子。

1. My friend can run. He can swim. (合并为一句)

_____

2. Li Ming was born in 2007. (对画线部分提问)

_____

3. He drew a picture of his mother last night. (对画线部分提问)

_____

4. see　hear　Helen　or　couldn't (.) (连词成句)

_____

5. Did you go to the supermarket? (作肯定回答)

_____

## 综合运用过关

六、根据短文内容回答问题。

When Mr Smith was young, he wanted to be a writer. But he became a pilot(飞行员). He flew to many places every year. So he didn't have time to play with his son Tom. Tom hated planes, because they always took his father away. On Tom's fifth birthday, Mr Smith gave his son a surprise. He bought him a present. Tom was very excited. When he opened the present, he saw that it was a model plane.

1. What did Mr Smith want to be?

_____

2. Did he become a writer?

_____

3. Did he have time to play with his son?

_____

4. Did Tom like planes?

_____

5. What was Tom's birthday present?

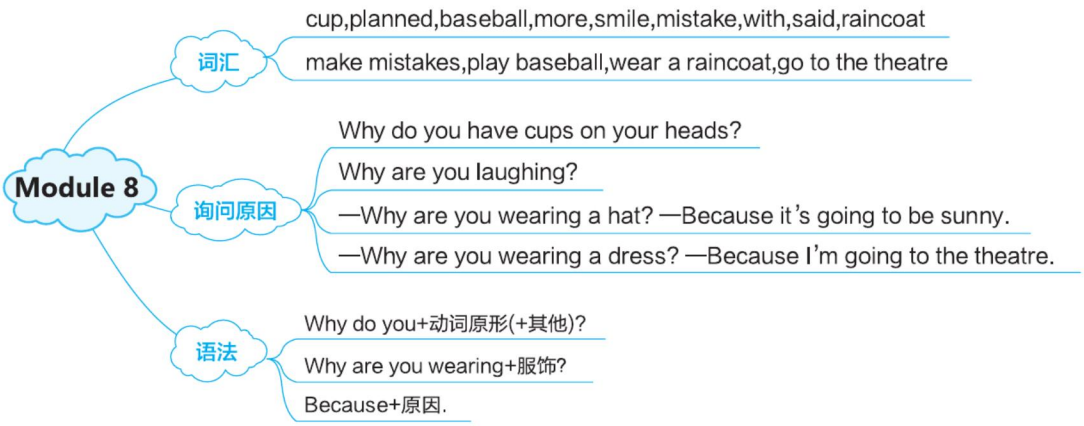
_____



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

# Module 8 复习训练

## 知识导图




**本模块重难点、易错点提醒**

1. 询问对方做某事的原因，可用句型：
   ①Why do you + 动词原形（+其他）？
   ②Why+be+主语+其他?
   答句：Because +原因.
2. plan to do sth.意为“计划做某事”。
3. 表示“做某事很容易”，可以用句型：It's easy to +动词原形（+其他）.
4. wear意为“穿”或“戴”。询问对方为什么穿某种衣服，可用句型：
   Why are you wearing(a/an)+服装？答句是由Because引导的状语从句，后面常接一个句子陈述原因。

## 重难点过关检测 ☞(答案见 114 页)

### 词汇过关

一、读一读，根据所给的单词写出一个同类词。

1. football　basketball　_____
2. what　where　_____
3. laugh　cry　_____
4. T-shirt　cap　_____
5. theatre　park　_____
6. rainy　sunny　_____

二、下面的这些字母按正确顺序排列后就形成了我们本模块的重点单词，请你读一读句子，按照句子的意思把正确的单词写到句子中的横线上。

anplned　taeksim　misle　puc　bllasead

1. I am sorry. I made a _____.
2. I _____ when I feel happy.
3. I am thirsty. I want a _____ of tea.
4. I _____ to visit my aunt.
5. Tom likes playing _____.

### 句型语法过关

三、选择合适的词补全句子。

1. My mother _____(buy/bought) a new dress this afternoon.
2. Sam _____ (see/saw) Lingling in the classroom this morning.



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3. Why is he _____(cry/crying)?

4. It's going to _____(sunny/be sunny).

5. It's easy to _____(fly/flying) kites.

## 四、读句子，找出句子对应的答语。

(　　)1. Why are you here?

(　　)2. Why are you wearing a raincoat?

(　　)3. Why do you sleep on the desk?

(　　)4. Why are you laughing?

(　　)5. What's in your schoolbag?

(　　)6. Where's my book?

A. Because I am tired.
B. Because this book is very interesting.
C. Because we are going to the zoo.
D. There are many books.
E. Oh, it's under the chair.
F. Because it's going to rain.

## 五、按要求完成句子。

1. wearing why a dress are you new (?)(连词成句)

_____

2. Why are you shouting? (用 angry 回答)

_____

3. Because I am happy. (用 Why 和 laugh 提问)

_____

4. Why is he tired? (用 play basketball 回答)

_____

5. Because it's going to rain.
(用 Why 和 raincoat 提问)

_____

# 综合运用过关

## 六、读短文，用所给词的正确形式填空。

Yesterday Sam 1. _____(want) to fly a kite. But his kite 2. _____(is) in the tree. So he 3. _____(ask) his father, "Dad, can you get the kite down?" His father was busy washing his car. He 4. _____(say), "You can ask your mum for help." Then Sam 5. _____(shout), "Mum, my kite is in the tree. Can you 6. _____(get) the kite down for me?" His mother was 7. _____(wash) clothes. "I am sorry. I am busy now," said his mother. At last, Sam 8. _____(climb) up the tree and 9. _____(get) the kite down by himself.

## 七、阅读短文，根据短文内容，将人物和图片连线。

Look here. There are five funny photos. The first one is about Amy. She is crying. Because she is sad. The second one is about Sam. He is shouting. Because he is angry. The third one is about some boys. They are tired. Because they are playing football. The fourth one is about two girls. They are eating food. Because they are hungry. The last one is about Tom. He is laughing. Because he won a game.

1. Amy　　A. 

2. Sam　　B. 

3. some boys　　C. 

4. two girls　　D. 

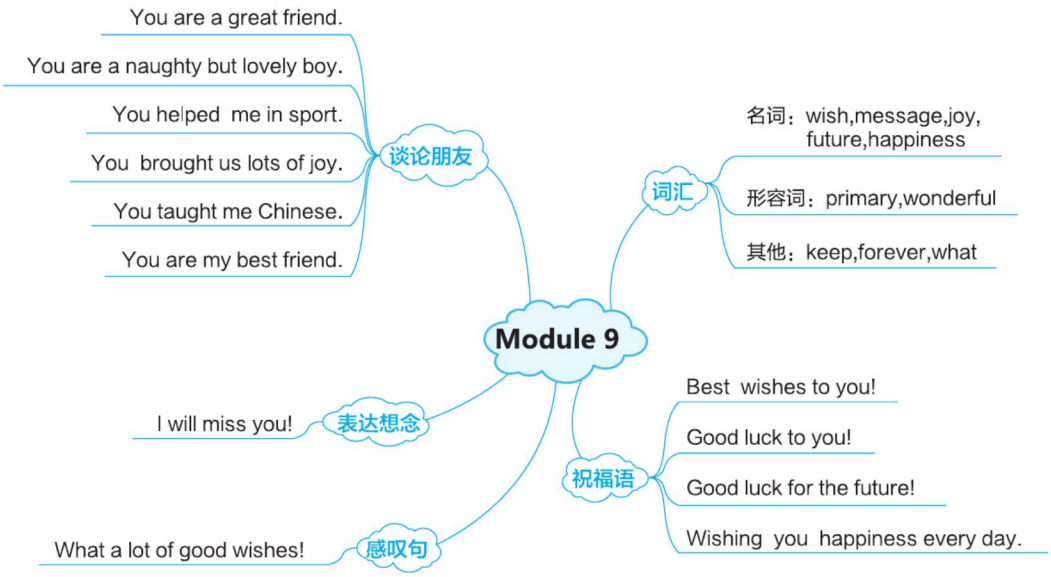
5. Tom　　E. 



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

# Module 9 复习训练

## 知识导图




**本模块重难点、易错点提醒**

感叹句表示赞美、惊叹等情感。通常由what或how引导，what引导的句型有：
What a/an +形容词+可数名词单数!
What+形容词+可数名词复数或不可数名词!

## 重难点过关检测 ☞(答案见114页)

### 词汇过关

一、读句子，圈出句子中与所给词同类的单词。

1. wonderful

You are a great friend.

2. Maths

You taught me Chinese.

3. your

I'll never forget our time together.

4. nice

You are a lovely girl.

5. then

First I write the name of my friend.

6. me

You brought us lots of joy.

### 句型语法过关

二、单项选择。

( ) 1. I am writing _____ email to my friend.
A. a B. an C. /

( ) 2. Lisa is a naughty _____ clever girl.
A. and B. or C. but

( ) 3. You are _____ best friend.
A. him B. my C. me

( ) 4. Reading can give you _____.
A. happy B. happier C. happiness



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

( )5. This letter is _____ Amy.

A. too B. for C. of

## 三、根据情景选择恰当的句子。

( )1. 你想祝福对方时,你可以说:

A. Here you are.

B. Best wishes to you.

( )2. 你想祝福对方好运,你可以说:

A. You are my best friend.

B. Good luck for the future.

( )3. 你想祝福对方天天开心,你可以说:

A. We had a happy time at school.

B. Wishing you happiness every day!

( )4. 你想叫同学写下他的名字,你可以说:

A. Please write you name.

B. Please write down the name of you.

( )5. 看到一幅漂亮的画,你会说:

A. What beautiful picture!

B. What a beautiful picture!

## 四、连词成句。

1. friend you a are wonderful (.)

_____

2. remember I all to want you (.)

_____

3. me Chinese taught you (.)

_____

4. time enjoyed I together our (.)

_____

5. joy us you brought of lots (.)

_____

## 综合运用过关

## 五、选择合适的句子补全对话。

**Mike**: Hello! Jack. 1. _____

**Jack**: I feel sad. Because I'm going away for a long time.

**Mike**: I'm sorry to hear that. 2. _____

**Jack**: America. My father has a new job there.

**Mike**: That is good news for your father.

**Jack**: 3. _____

**Mike**: Are you going to a new school?

**Jack**: Yes. 4. _____ I'll be in Grade Five.

**Mike**: Will you write letters to me?

**Jack**: Of course. You are my best friend.

**Mike**: I will miss you! 5. _____

**Jack**: Thank you.

A. I'm going to a new primary school.
B. But it's bad news for me.
C. Best wishes to you!
D. Where are you going?
E. What's the matter with you?

## 六、阅读短文,判断句子正(T)误(F)。

Dear Mary,

We're going to say goodbye to our primary school. You are my best friend. I enjoyed our time together. We had a good time at school. We studied and played together. We helped each other. You will go back to the UK. I will miss you. Wishing you happiness every day. Please come back to China to play with me next summer holiday.

Yours,

Linda

( )1. Mary and Linda are good friends.

( )2. Mary and Linda are pupils now.

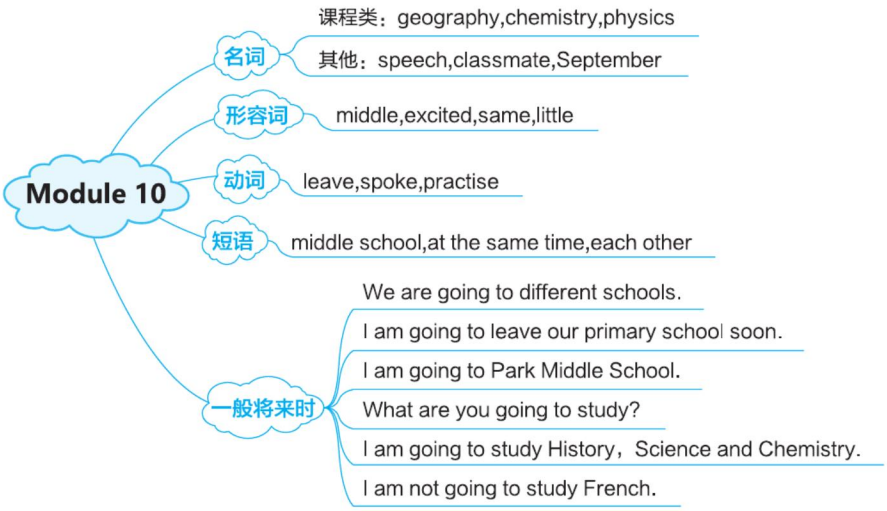
( )3. Mary and Linda helped each other at school.

( )4. Linda will go back to China.

( )5. Linda wants to play with Mary this summer holiday.

# Module 10 复习训练

## 知识导图




**本模块重难点、易错点提醒**

用现在进行时表示将来，常有“将要、计划、打算”的含义，这种用法主语通常是人。动词come, go, leave, start, arrive等常用现在进行时表示将来。

例句：We're going to different schools.我们要去不同的学校了。

## 重难点过关检测 ☞(答案见115页)

### 词汇过关

一、找出不同类的单词。

( )1. A. spoke B. learn C. study

( )2. A. Chinese B. Maths C. meet

( )3. A. History B. happy C. excited

( )4. A. same B. school C. different

( )5. A. little B. more C. leave

二、读句子，根据图片提示将句子补充完整。

1. 

2. 

3. 


4. 


5. 


1. He is making a _____.
2. My _____ are going to different schools.
3. I am going to middle school this _____.
4. The girl is from the UK. But she can _____ Chinese very well.
5. Lingling is going to study _____.

### 句型语法过关

三、选择合适的词填空。（注意大小写）

to on with for be

1. She is going to Beijing. I am happy _____ her.
2. We'll always _____ good friends.
3. Let's write lots of emails _____ each other.

4. Please keep _____ practising English every day.

5. I am going to learn English _____ my new friends.

## 四、选择合适的词补全句子。

1. It's time to _____ (say / speak) goodbye.

2. Lisa can _____ (say / speak) French.

3. You are going to _____ (met /meet) new friends there.

4. I am the winner, so I am _____ (excite/ excited).

5. I am going to _____ (study/studying) Chinese.

6. Let me _____ (write/writing) a letter to my mum.

## 五、按要求完成句子。

1. you how to will school go (?)
(连词成句)

_____

2. can lots we of write emails (.)
(连词成句)

_____

3. Sam is going to study French. (改为否定句)

_____

4. I am going to Lake Middle School.
(改为一般疑问句)

_____

5. He is going to study History.
(对画线部分提问)

_____

# 综合运用过关

## 六、读一读，选择正确的句子补全对话。

**A**: 1. _____

**B**: I am going to Lake Middle School.

**A**: 2. _____ Where is it?

**B**: 3. _____ It's a great school.

**A**: 4. _____

**B**: I am going to study Chinese, History and Science. 5. _____

**A**: That's wonderful! I am going to study English, History and Science. See you two months later. Bye!

**B**: See you later.

A. It's near the Central Park.
B. I am going there too.
C. What subjects will you study there?
D. I'm also going to study French.
E. Which school are you going to, Mike?

## 七、阅读短文，判断句子正 (T) 误 (F)。

In America, primary school lasts six years. There are about twenty students in one class. They are in different groups. Different groups may have different textbooks. The whole grade graduates(毕业) at the same time, but the students learn different knowledge(知识).

Primary school students don't have schoolbags. Their books are in the school. The students usually study Reading, Maths, Language, Science, Music, Art and PE.

( ) 1. In America, there are six grades in primary school.

( ) 2. There are about twelve students in one class.

( ) 3. The students can learn different knowledge.

( ) 4. Primary school students have schoolbags.

( ) 5. The students usually study Reading, Maths, Language, Science, Music, Art and PE.

# 全书听力专练 ☞(答案见115页)

## 听力(一)

听力训练(一)

一、听录音，选出你所听到的单词。

( )1. A. basketball B. baseball C. became

( )2. A. cup B. cat C. cap

( )3. A. bought B. brought C. buy

( )4. A. born B. model C. more

( )5. A. see B. seed C. said

二、听录音，判断图片与内容是(T)否(F)相符。

1.  ( )

2.  ( )

3.  ( )

4.  ( )

5. 

( )

三、选出你所听到的句子或对话。

( )1. A. —How much is it?
—It's thirty dollars.
B. —How much is it?
—It's thirteen dollars.
C. —How much is it?
—It's thirteen *yuan*.

( )2. A. I want a hot dog and an apple.
B. I want a hamburger and an apple.
C. I want a hamburger and an egg.

( )3. A. Daming, I buy a present for you.
B. Daming, I bought a present for you.
C. Daming, I bought a kite for you.

( )4. A. He makes a video about his space travel.
B. He is watching a video about his trip.
C. He made a video about his space travel.

( )5. A. What do you want to eat?
B. What do you want to drink?
C. When do you want to eat?

四、听录音，找出对应的答句。

( )1. A. It's half past twelve.
B. In October.
C. It's Sunday today.

( )2. A. We are going to the library.
B. We like reading in the library.
C. We are reading in the library.

( )3. A. Yes, I can. B. Yes, I am.
C. Yes, I do.

( )4. A. It's jumping.
B. They are jumping.
C. He is jumping.

( )5. A. Sorry, I can't.
B. No, I can't help you.
C. Yes, he can.

## 听力(二)

听力训练(二)

一、听录音，选出你所听到的单词。

( )1. A. Everyone B. Everything C. Nothing

( )2. A. future B. forever C. forget

( )3. A. enjoy B. excited C. each

( )4. A. can B. can't C. could

( )5. A. careful B. chemistry C. cloudy

二、听录音，给图片排序。





(　　)　(　　)　(　　)





(　　)　(　　)　(　　)

三、听录音，根据录音内容填空。

Today is Sunday. It's _____ and _____. We are having lunch in a restaurant. Tom is having a _____ and some fish. I'm eating some _____ and chicken. After lunch, we are going to the supermarket. Tomorrow is Ann's _____. We are going to buy things for the _____. We are going to buy some _____ and a big cake.

## 听力（三）

听力训练(三)

一、听录音，根据录音内容连线。

1. Sam　　A. 


2. Daming　　B. 

3. Amy　　C. 

4. Lingling　　D. 

5. Ms Smart　　E. 

二、选出你所听到的句子。

(　　)1. A. It will rain in Shanghai.
B. It will snow in Shanghai.
C. It will be windy in Shanghai.

(　　)2. A. I am going to middle school.
B. I am going to the supermarket.
C. I am going to Zhongshan Park.

(　　)3. A. We are going to study Physics.
B. We are going to study Chemistry.
C. We are going to study Geography.

(　　)4. A. Good luck to you.
B. Good luck for the future.
C. Best wishes to you.

三、听录音，找出对应的答句。

(　　)1. A. Because she's going to a party.
B. Because it gets too cold.
C. Because she is sad.

(　　)2. A. Yang Liwei is a taikonaut.
B. Yang Liwei flew into space in 2003.
C. Yang Liwei flew into space in a spaceship.

(　　)3. A. Yes, she did.　　B. Yes, it was.
C. She couldn't see or hear.

(　　)4. A. Thank you.
B. Here you are.
C. You are welcome.

(　　)5. A. The name of the spaceship is *Shenzhou V*.
B. This is our spaceship.
C. I bought a model spaceship for you.

四、听短文，根据短文内容判断句子正（T）误（F）。

(　　)1. It's Saturday today.

(　　)2. John is going to have a picnic with his friends.

(　　)3. Mary is going to the park.

(　　)4. Mike is going to play baseball with his friend Tom.

(　　)5. Ann is going to do some housework.

# 全书知识小结

## 词 汇

### 一、名词类：

dollar 美元　cent 美分　cashier 收银员
cola 可乐　duck 鸭子　pond 池塘
cloud 云　cow 奶牛　rabbit 兔子
balloon 气球　mess 肮脏　time 次
space 太空　spaceship 宇宙飞船
model 模型　taikonaut 宇航员
video 录像　letter 字母
role model 榜样　cup 杯子
baseball 棒球　smile 微笑
mistake 错误　raincoat 雨衣
message 留言　wish 愿望
best wishes 最美好的祝愿
primary school 小学　future 将来
joy 乐趣　happiness 幸福
speech 演说　classmate 同班同学
middle school 中学　geography 地理
September 九月　chemistry 化学
physics 物理

### 二、动词类

look 看上去　enjoy 享受
look like 看来好像　stay 保持
cry 哭　shine 照耀
fly away 飞走　blow 吹
play 演奏　bark（狗）吠
got（get 的过去式）得到
finish 完成　decide 决定
brought（bring 的过去式）带来
bring back 带回　flew（fly 的过去式）飞
spent（spend 的过去式）度过
became（become 的过去式）变成
live 活着　born 出生
spell 拼写　keep on 保持
planned（plan 的过去式）计划
make mistakes 犯错误　said（say 的过去式）说
keep 保留　leave 离开
spoke（speak 的过去式）说（某种语言）
practise 练习

### 三、形容词类

careful 小心的　dry 干的
interested 感兴趣的　paper 纸做的
national 国家的　proud 感到骄傲的
primary 小学的　wonderful 了不起的
middle 中间的　excited 激动的
little 极少量的　same 相同的

### 四、副词类

later 后来　just 就　loudly 大声地
home 到家　about 大约　more 更强烈地
forever 永远　sometime 某个时候

### 五、介词类

like 像……一样　as 作为　with 与……有关

### 六、代词类

everyone 人人　nothing 没有事情
herself 她自己

### 七、数词类

third 第三　first 第一

## 交际用语

### 一、快餐店点餐

1. 服务员招呼客人：
Can I help you? 你想要点什么？
2. 询问物品价格及回答：
询问：How much is ＋可数名词单数或不可数名词？
或 How much are＋可数名词复数？
回答：It's/They're ＋数量词＋货币单位.
3. 询问对方想吃什么的句型及回答：
询问：What do you want to eat?

回答：I want (to eat) a/an/some + 食物, please.

4. 询问对方想要喝什么的句型及回答：

询问：What do you want to drink?

回答：I want (to drink) a/an/some + 饮料, please.

**二、谈论计划和未来天气**

1. 描述某人打算做某事的句型结构：

主语 + be going to + 动词原形 + 其他.

2. 询问某人打算何时做某事的句型及回答：

询问：When + be + 主语 + going to + 动词原形 + 其他?

回答：主语 + be going to + 动词原形 + 时间.

3. 描述未来天气状况的句型结构：

It will be + 描述天气的形容词 + 其他.

或：It will + 描述天气的动词 + 其他.

**三、描述照片或图片中的情景**

1. 描述某人/物正在干什么的句型：

主语(单数) + is + 动词的现在分词 + 其他.

2. 询问对方正在做某事的句型及回答：

询问：What are you doing?

回答：I'm /We're + 动词的现在分词 + 其他.

3. 描述某些人/物正在干什么的句型：

主语(复数) + are + 动词的现在分词 + 其他.

**四、寻求帮助**

Who can help me? 谁能帮我?

**五、描述正在做一件事时另一件事同时发生的场景**

1. 询问某人正在干什么的句型及回答：

询问：What + be(am/is /are) + 主语 + doing?

回答：主语 + be(am/is/are) + 动词的现在分词 + 其他.

2. 描述正在做一件事，但另一件事又发生了的句型：

主语 + be 动词 + 动词的现在分词( + 其他), but + 主语 + 动词原形/动词第三人称单数形式( + 其他).

**六、介绍礼物**

1. 含有 be 动词的一般过去时的陈述句句型：

主语 + be(was/were) + 其他.

2. 表达“给某人买了某物。”的句型：

主语 + bought + 某人 + 某物.

或：主语 + bought + 某物 + for + 某人.

**七、介绍人物的生平事迹**

1. 含有其他动词的一般过去时的陈述句句型：

主语 + 动词过去式 + 其他.

2. 描述某人过去不能做某事的句型：

主语 + couldn't + 动词原形( + 其他).

**八、询问和说明原因**

1. 询问某人做某事的原因的句型：

Why do/does + 主语 + 动词原形 + 其他?

2. 询问对方为什么穿/戴某种服饰的句型及回答：

询问：Why are you wearing(a/an) + 服饰?

回答：Because + 原因.

**九、表达良好祝愿**

1. Best wishes to you!

向你致以最美好的祝愿!

2. Wishing you happiness every day!

祝你每天都快乐!

**十、谈论中学生活**

1. 询问某人是否将要做某事的句型：

询问：Be 动词 + 主语 + going to + 动词原形 + 其他?

回答：Yes，主语 + am/is/are.

或：No，主语 + am/is/are not.

2. 询问某人将来要学什么(科目)的句型：

询问：What + be 动词 + 主语 + going to study?

回答：主语 + be 动词 + going to study + (科目)名称.

# 月考卷一 Modules 1～3 过关检测卷

时间：40 分钟　满分：100 分

| 题号 | 听力（30 分） | | | | 笔试（70 分） | | | | | | | 总分 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 一 | 二 | 三 | 四 | 五 | 六 | 七 | 八 | 九 | 十 | 十一 | |
| 得分 | | | | | | | | | | | | |

## 第一部分　听力（30 分）

听力测试

**一** 听录音，选出你所听到的内容。（5 分）

（　）1. A. eat　　B. meat　　C. meal

（　）2. A. hot dog　　B. hamburger　　C. cola

（　）3. A. dry　　B. try　　C. cry

（　）4. A. when　　B. what　　C. want

（　）5. A. having　　B. drinking　　C. doing

**二** 听录音，根据录音内容给图片排序。（5 分）








（　）　（　）　（　）　（　）　（　）

**三** 听录音，选出你所听问句的正确答语。（10 分）

（　）1. A. I want some sandwiches.　B. I want some milk.　C. It's five dollars.

（　）2. A. At half past eleven.　B. He is going to have lunch.　C. I am going to have lunch.

（　）3. A. It will be sunny in Guangzhou.　B. It will rain in Xi'an.　C. It will be cloudy in Beijing.

（　）4. A. The birds are singing in the tree.　B. The ducks are eating under the tree.　C. The cows are drinking near the tree.

（　）5. A. There are five.　B. He is twelve.　C. It's eleven dollars.

**四** 听录音，根据所听内容填空。（10 分）

1. Xiaoming _____ very hungry.
2. The hamburger is three _____.
3. There are some _____ in the sky.
4. _____ your meal!
5. It's going to _____ soon.



## 第二部分　笔试（70 分）

**五** 判断下列每组单词的类别，将方框中同类单词的序号填在横线上。（5 分）

A. sunny　B. cow　C. blowing　D. play　E. dinner

1. breakfast　lunch　_____
2. windy　snowy　_____
3. eat　drink　_____
4. fish　bird　_____
5. shining　jumping　_____

**六** 单项选择。（10 分）

（　）1. —_____　—Yes. I'd like some coffee.
A. Can I help you?　B. Here you are.　C. Come in, please.

（　）2. —_____ do you want to _____?　— I want some noodles.
A. What; drink　B. What; eat　C. Why; eat

（　）3. Xiaohong is hungry. She _____ eat some chicken.
A. want　B. wants　C. wants to

（　）4. She is going to visit the Great Wall _____.
A. last month　B. next week　C. yesterday

（　）5. Let's _____ a picnic tomorrow.
A. having　B. had　C. have

（　）6. —_____ are you going to eat?　—At half past twelve.
A. What　B. When　C. Where

（　）7. Look! The girls _____ in the playground.
A. dance　B. dancing　C. are dancing

（　）8. It will _____ in Tianjin.
A. rainy　B. rain　C. be rain

（　）9. —_____ are the apples?　—They are ten *yuan*.
A. How many　B. How much　C. What

（　）10. Look, there is a beautiful bird _____ the tree.
A. in　B. on　C. at

**七** 根据图片，补全句子。（6 分）

1. 
2. 
3. 
4. 
5. 
6. 



姓名　学号　班级　学校　密　封　线

1. I want to eat some _____.
2. The boy is _____.
3. We are going to have a _____.
4. The three cows are _____ water now.
5. There are two lovely _____.
6. It will _____ in Beijing tomorrow.

## 八 按要求完成句子。(15分)

1. I want to drink a cola. (对画线部分提问)

_____

2. It's half past eleven. (对画线部分提问)

_____

3. She is going to visit her grandparents this weekend. (对画线部分提问)

_____

4. It won't be sunny tomorrow. (改为肯定句)

_____

5. It's starting to rain. The birds are flying away. (合成一句话)

_____

## 九 阅读短文，判断句子正(T)误(F)。(10分)

**Tina**: Hello, Sam. Look at my family photos.
**Sam**: Oh, beautiful! What's your father?
**Tina**: My father is a teacher.
**Sam**: What is he doing?
**Tina**: He's writing a letter. This is my mother. She's doing the dishes.
**Sam**: Who is this baby?
**Tina**: She's my little sister. She's playing with the doll.
**Sam**: What are you doing?
**Tina**: I'm watching TV.
**Sam**: Oh! How nice!

( ) 1. Tina's father is a teacher.
( ) 2. Tina's father is reading a letter.
( ) 3. Tina's mother is listening to music.
( ) 4. Tina is watching TV in the photo.
( ) 5. Tina has a little brother.



## 十 阅读短文，选择正确答案。(10分)

(建议用时：5分钟)

Hi! My name is Zhang Fan. I'm 13 years old. I like eating delicious and healthy food. For breakfast, I always eat a lot. I have some bread, meat and two eggs. I also drink milk. Sometimes, I have noodles. This meal gives me energy (体力) for sports. I always have soup, meat and vegetables for dinner. I like vegetables. They are good for me. After dinner, sometimes I have some fruits. They have vitamins (维生素) A, C and so on. So the fruits are good for everyone. It is also important to drink lots of water. It can also bring you a healthy body.

( ) 1. What does Zhang Fan always eat for breakfast?
A. Hamburgers. B. French fries. C. Bread, meat and two eggs.

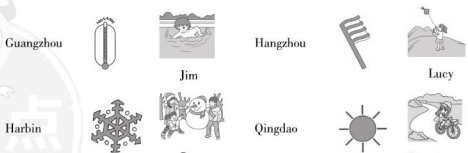
( ) 2. Why does Zhang Fan eat a lot in the morning?
A. Because he always feels hungry.
B. Because he needs energy for sports.
C. Because his mother wants him to eat a lot.

( ) 3. What does Zhang Fan always have for dinner?
A. Fruit and vegetables. B. Water and meat. C. Soup, meat and vegetables.

( ) 4. After dinner, Zhang Fan _____ has some fruits.
A. usually B. sometimes C. never

( ) 5. It is also important to drink lots of _____. It can also bring you a healthy body.
A. milk B. colas C. water

## 十一 写作。请你看图说一说下列城市明天的天气情况，并根据提示说说这些城市的小朋友们将会做什么事，然后写下来。要求不少于40词。(14分)




_____

_____

_____



密 封 线

# 期中检测卷

时间：60分钟　满分：100分

| 题号 | 听力（30分） | | | | 笔试（70分） | | | | | | | | | 总分 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 一 | 二 | 三 | 四 | 五 | 六 | 七 | 八 | 九 | 十 | 十一 | 十二 | 十三 | |
| 得分 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

## 第一部分　听力（30分）

听力测试

**一** 听录音，选出所听句子中含有的单词。（5分）

（　）1. A. how　　B. now　　C. cow
（　）2. A. blowing　　B. snowing　　C. showing
（　）3. A. carry　　B. take　　C. bring
（　）4. A. bell　　B. smell　　C. tell
（　）5. A. pears　　B. stairs　　C. wears

**二** 听录音，根据所听内容给图片标序号。（5分）







（　）　（　）　（　）　（　）　（　）

**三** 听录音，选出所听问句的答语。（10分）

（　）1. A. A cola, please.　　B. A hamburger for me.
（　）2. A. It's seven o'clock.　　B. It will rain tomorrow.
（　）3. A. I am doing my homework.　　B. I'm going to do my homework.
（　）4. A. She's in the bedroom.　　B. She's buying things.
（　）5. A. She's cleaning her room.　　B. He's cleaning his room.

**四** 听录音，补全句子。（10分）

1. What do you want to _____?
2. It will _____ in Shanghai.
3. The _____ is eating grass.
4. The _____ are flying away.
5. Mr Wang is talking, but the _____ rings.



## 第二部分　笔试（70分）

**五** 选出不同类的一项。（5分）

（　）1. A. visit　　B. eat　　C. here　　D. want
（　）2. A. see　　B. go　　C. bought　　D. come
（　）3. A. *suona*　　B. violin　　C. piano　　D. ball
（　）4. A. singing　　B. crying　　C. laugh　　D. dancing
（　）5. A. hamburger　　B. cola　　C. hot dog　　D. sandwich

**六** 根据图片，补充短语。（5分）

1. 
_____ the *suona*

2. 
_____ a bike

3. 
_____ past nine

4. 
be _____

5. 
have a _____

**七** 单项选择。（10分）

（　）1. We are looking _____ the ducks.
A. out　　B. at　　C. near

（　）2. She's _____ her homework.
A. do　　B. did　　C. doing

（　）3. The _____ are playing in the park.
A. child　　B. childs　　C. children

（　）4. His friends can't hear _____.
A. he　　B. his　　C. him

（　）5. —_____ you help me?　—Sorry, I can't.
A. Are　　B. Can　　C. Is

（　）6. —How _____ is the pen?　—Ten *yuan*.
A. few　　B. many　　C. much

（　）7. Daming is playing _____ *suona*, but Sam is playing _____ table tennis.
A. /; the　　B. the; the　　C. the; /



姓名　学号　班级　学校　密　封　线

( ) 8. The birds are singing very _____.
A. loudly B. live C. again

( ) 9. The boy looks _____ his father.
A. likes B. like C. to like

( ) 10. The question is easy, _____ he can answer it.
A. but B. and C. or

## 八 读句子，用方框中单词的适当形式完成句子。(5分)

read buy want ring say

1. "Let's go!" Simon _____.
2. Mum is going to _____ things.
3. Sam is _____ a storybook.
4. Mike is having dinner, but the phone _____.
5. Lingling _____ to eat some bread.

## 九 按要求改写句子。(10分)

1. I want to drink some apple juice. (对画线部分提问)

_____

2. A hamburger for me. A cola for me. (合并为一个句子)

_____

3. There are some ducks on the pond. (改为单数句)

_____

4. I can carry this desk. (改为否定句)

_____

5. I am going to school at eight. (对画线部分提问)

_____

## 十 看图片，仿照例子写句子。(10分)

例： (he)

He is walking, but it starts to rain.



1.  (they)

_____

2.  (she)

_____

3.  (I)

_____

4.  (he; sister)

_____

## 十一 阅读短文，根据首字母提示，写出恰当的单词。(10分)

I'm Linda. I am in the park now. It is s_____ today. The sun is s_____. The birds are s_____. There are many children in the park. Look. A boy is p_____ with his dog. The dog starts to bark very l_____. Two girls are r_____ books u_____ the tree. "Stop!" says the boy. The dog s_____. Some boys are f_____ kites near the lake. They are very h_____.

## 十二 阅读短文，判断句子正(T)误(F)。(5分) (建议用时：5分钟)

Sam and Jim are playing near Mr Green's house. They are throwing a frisbee (飞盘). Sam can't throw the frisbee. Jim says to him, "Look! Throw it like this." "Like this?" "Yes, good! Look out!" "Oh, dear!" Mr Green's window is broken. He is drinking tea under the tree. "I'm sorry, Mr Green," says Sam. Mr Green says, "It doesn't matter. Please don't play near my house next time."

( ) 1. Sam and Jim are throwing a frisbee.
( ) 2. Sam is teaching Jim to throw the frisbee.
( ) 3. Mr Green's window is broken.
( ) 4. Mr Green is playing chess under the tree.
( ) 5. Sam apologizes (道歉) to Mr Green.

## 十三 小作文。(10分)

Lucy 和 Lily 一起去快餐店吃午餐。请你发挥想象，写一段 Lucy 和 Lily 在快餐店点餐的对话吧！要求：语句通顺，语法正确，不少于40词。

_____

_____



密 封 线

# 月考卷二 Modules 6～8 过关检测卷

时间：60 分钟 满分：100 分

| 题号 | 听力（30 分） | | | | 笔试（70 分） | | | | | | | | 总分 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 一 | 二 | 三 | 四 | 五 | 六 | 七 | 八 | 九 | 十 | 十一 | 十二 | |
| 得分 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

## 第一部分 听力（30 分）

听力测试

**一** 听录音，选出与你所听内容相符的图片。（5 分）

（ ）1. A.  B. 

（ ）2. A.  B. 

（ ）3. A.  B. 

（ ）4. A.  B. 

（ ）5. A.  B. 

**二** 听录音，按照所听内容给图片标序号。（5 分）

（ ） （ ） （ ） （ ） （ ）

**三** 听录音，选出你所听到的问句的答语。（10 分）

（ ）1. A. Yes，I was. B. No，I didn't.

（ ）2. A. He is nine years old. B. He was nine years old.

（ ）3. A. In 2003. B. Space.

（ ）4. A. Birthday presents. B. My friends.

（ ）5. A. I am interested in stamps. B. I'm collecting stamps.

**四** 听录音，补全句子。（10 分）

1. This American _____ took a man into space.
2. I brought you this book _____ the Great Wall.
3. Simon was _____ in the book too.
4. So I _____ her a bicycle.
5. *Shenzhou V* took a Chinese taikonaut into space for the _____ time.



## 第二部分 笔试（70 分）

**五** 找出下列单词的同类词，并写在横线上。（12 分）

| what | plan | coat | why | decide | laugh |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| where | raincoat | smile | shout | learn | dress |

1. cry _____
2. when _____
3. finish _____
4. jacket _____

**六** 单项选择。（10 分）

（ ）1. I was born _____ China _____ 2006.
A. in；in B. in；on C. in；at

（ ）2. —_____ —I was born in 1998.
A. How are you? B. When were you born? C. Where were you born?

（ ）3. My uncle _____ a bike and went away.
A. ride B. rides C. rode

（ ）4. Lots of people read Mo Yan's books _____ he is very famous.
A. because B. but C. or

（ ）5. Could you _____ a card for me?
A. made B. make C. making

（ ）6. _____ a little boy，he can't finish the work.
A. At B. When C. As

（ ）7. *Shenzhou V* _____ some seeds _____ space.
A. take；into B. bring；to C. took；into

（ ）8. Lots of boys are interested in _____ basketball.
A. playing B. plays C. played

（ ）9. She _____ me a present.
A. didn't bought B. didn't buy C. doesn't bought

（ ）10. —_____ did you go? —I went to the park.
A. What B. When C. Where



姓名 学号 密 封 班级 线 学校

## 七 根据情景找句子。(5分)

( ) 1. 你想告诉外国友人长城是我们的骄傲，你应说：_____

( ) 2. 小女孩不说话，因为：_____

( ) 3. 你想讲海伦周游世界的奇迹，你会说：_____

( ) 4. 老师想知道李明做了什么，你会说：_____

( ) 5. 王勇对美国感兴趣，你会说：_____

A. Wang Yong is interested in the US.
B. He made a model of a spaceship.
C. We are all proud of the Great Wall.
D. She couldn't see or hear.
E. Helen travelled all over the world.

## 八 根据图片和首字母提示完成句子。(5分)

1. I phoned you last night, but you weren't at h_____.



2. Simon made a p_____ boat yesterday.



3. My grandma bought me a m_____ car.



4. Daming is very interested in s_____ travel.



5. Lei Feng is a r_____ m_____ for us.



## 九 按要求完成句子。(10分)

1. She was born in 1874. (对画线部分提问)

_____ _____ she born?

2. The old man can't see and can't hear. (改为用 or 连接的句子)

The old man _____ _____ _____ _____.

3. I bought a present for you. (改为同义句)

_____

4. It is Daming's birthday today. (用 yesterday 改成一般过去时的句子)

_____

5. English mistakes words easy it is with to make (.) (连词成句)

_____



## 十 阅读短文，并根据短文内容填空。(10分)

Yesterday was Ben's birthday. His parents decided to have a birthday party for him in the evening.

In the morning, Ben and his father cleaned the house and decorated (装饰) the sitting room. Then they went shopping for the party. They bought a birthday cake, some chocolates, some fruit and some birthday candles (蜡烛) in the shop. They came back home from the shop and put these things on the table. In the evening, all Ben's friends came to his house. They gave him a lot of presents. The children sang the song "Happy Birthday" to Ben. Ben blew out (吹灭) the candles. After eating some cakes, they played inside and watched cartoons happily.

1. His parents _____ for Ben yesterday evening.
2. Ben and his father _____ and decorated the sitting room.
3. They _____ a birthday cake, some chocolates, some fruit and some birthday candles in the _____.
4. Ben's _____ gave him a lot of presents.
5. After eating some cakes, they _____ inside and _____ happily.

## 十一 阅读短文，判断句子正(T)误(F)。(10分) (建议用时：5分钟)

Confucius was born in Shandong. When he was 3 years old, his father died. His mother gave him good education (教育). He studied hard and became a teacher when he was about 30 years old. He had more than three thousand students. He wrote lots of books. And he lived to be 72. He is well known (有名的) all over the world.

( ) 1. Confucius was born in Beijing.
( ) 2. When he was about 30 years old, he became a teacher.
( ) 3. He had more than three thousand students.
( ) 4. He died when he was 74 years old.
( ) 5. He is well known all over the world.

## 十二 小作文。(8分)

你长大以后想干什么呢？请你以"My Dream"为题，写一篇不少于40词的短文。

**My Dream**

I have a wonderful dream. _____

_____

_____

# 期末检测卷

时间：60 分钟　满分：100 分

| | 听力（30 分） | | | | 笔试（70 分） | | | | | | | 总 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 题　号 | 一 | 二 | 三 | 四 | 五 | 六 | 七 | 八 | 九 | 十 | 十一 | 分 |
| 得　分 | | | | | | | | | | | | |

姓名　学号　班级　学校　密　封　线

## 第一部分　听力（30 分）

听力测试

**一** 听录音，选出你所听句子中的单词。（5 分）

（　）1. A. shine　　B. swimming　　C. shopping
（　）2. A. raining　　B. rainy　　C. rain
（　）3. A. taught　　B. brought　　C. bought
（　）4. A. start　　B. party　　C. park
（　）5. A. model　　B. middle　　C. module

**二** 听录音，判断图片与所听句子是（T）否（F）相符。（5 分）

1. 　（　）
2. 　（　）
3. 　（　）
4. 　（　）
5. 

（　）

**三** 听录音，选出所听问句的答语。（10 分）

（　）1. A. A hamburger, please.　　B. A cola for me, please.
C. I want some chicken.
（　）2. A. I am going to study French.　　B. I am going to go swimming.
C. I am going to Park Middle School.
（　）3. A. He plays football.　　B. He is playing football.
C. He is going to play football.
（　）4. A. I am a middle school student.　　B. He is a taikonaut.
C. She is a singer.
（　）5. A. He was born in September.　　B. She was born in 2015.
C. She was born in Qingdao.



**四** 听录音，根据短文内容判断下列句子正（T）误（F）。（10 分）

（　）1. It's Saturday today.
（　）2. John is going to have a picnic with his friends.
（　）3. Mary is going to the park.
（　）4. Mike is going to play baseball with his friends.
（　）5. Ann is going to do some housework.

## 第二部分　笔试（70 分）

**五** 找出不同类的单词。（5 分）

（　）1. A. cow　　B. rabbit　　C. cloudy
（　）2. A. future　　B. snow　　C. rain
（　）3. A. cent　　B. live　　C. dollar
（　）4. A. got　　B. become　　C. said
（　）5. A. video　　B. model　　C. national

**六** 根据句意及图片提示写单词。（10 分）

1. The _____ is swimming on the pond.


2. —How much is it?　—It's only one _____.


3. Be _____. The water is very hot.


4. I can _____ this word,
C—O—W, cow.



5. This _____ took a man into space.


**七** 单项选择。（20 分）

（　）1. The cake _____ nice.
A. looking　　B. looks　　C. look

( ) 2. She's eating dinner, _____ her sister is eating dinner, too.
A. or B. / C. and

( ) 3. She's buying things _____ her mother.
A. of B. to C. for

( ) 4. —_____ will you come back?
—At half past four.
A. When B. Who C. Where

( ) 5. Jane got many presents _____ her friends.
A. on B. from C. at

( ) 6. He wants his son _____ a science teacher in the future.
A. be B. is C. to be

( ) 7. He wants to fly a kite _____ there is no wind today.
A. to B. or C. but

( ) 8. —_____ are you wearing a dress?
—Because it's going to be sunny.
A. What B. Why C. How

( ) 9. Sally was _____ English storybooks.
A. interested in B. interesting C. interested

( ) 10. The old man thanked me _____ my help.
A. on B. for C. with

## 八 读一读，选择对应的答句。(10分)

( ) 1. What time is it?
( ) 2. How much is the pencil?
( ) 3. Can I help you?
( ) 4. Who can help me?
( ) 5. Why are you laughing?
( ) 6. What are you doing?
( ) 7. Which school is Amy going to?
( ) 8. What is Sam going to study?
( ) 9. What do you want to eat?
( ) 10. How will you go to school?

A. I will go to school by bike.
B. I'm watching TV.
C. She's going to Park Middle School.
D. Yes, please.
E. He is going to study French.
F. I want to eat two hamburgers.
G. Because I am happy.
H. It's two *yuan*.
I. It's nine o'clock.
J. I can help you.



## 九 阅读短文，根据短文内容判断正（T）误（F）。(5分)

John is Jack and Kate's brother. They all study in a middle school. John is in Grade Nine, Jack is in Grade Eight and Kate is in Grade Seven. They work very hard. They are now studying Chinese. They have lunch at school. They often go home at four thirty. Sometimes they go home at five. Their father and mother are both teachers. They teach English. They work in a middle school.

( ) 1. Kate has one brother.
( ) 2. John, Jack and Kate are in the same grade.
( ) 3. They have lunch at home.
( ) 4. They sometimes go home at five.
( ) 5. Their father and mother are English teachers.

## 十 阅读短文，根据短文内容选择正确答案。(10分)

(建议用时：5分钟)

Marie Curie (居里夫人) was a famous scientist. She was born in Poland in 1867. As a young woman, she went to Paris, France to study. She worked very hard. She was very good at Physics and Science. In 1903, the Curies got the Nobel Prize (诺贝尔奖). She received a second Nobel Prize for Chemistry in 1911. So she became the first scientist in the world to win two Nobel Prizes. In 1934, at the age of 67, she died (死).

( ) 1. Was Marie Curie a famous scientist?
A. Yes, she was. B. No, she doesn't. C. No, she isn't.

( ) 2. Marie Curie went to _____ to study.
A. Paris B. Beijing C. New York

( ) 3. Marie Curie won the Nobel Prize in _____.
A. 1903 B. 1934 C. 1930

( ) 4. Marie Curie was good at _____.
A. Art B. Physics C. Geography

( ) 5. Marie Curie died at the age of _____.
A. 77 B. 67 C. 76

## 十一 写作。(10分)

马上就要放暑假了，请你以“My Summer Holiday Plan”为题，写出自己的暑期计划。不少于40词。

**My Summer Holiday Plan**



密 封 线




# 检测卷部分

## 月考卷一 Modules 1 ~3 过关检测卷

**听力材料：**

一、1. Enjoy your meal.
2. I want a hamburger.
3. It's dry over there.
4. When are we going to get up?
5. The cows are drinking water in the photo.

二、1. —What time is it? —It's half past ten.
2. The ducks are swimming on the pond.
3. The sun is shining.
4. I'm thirsty. I want a cola.
5. Look at the dark clouds. It's going to rain soon.

三、1. What do you want to drink?
2. When are you going to have lunch?
3. What will the weather be like in Beijing?
4. What are the ducks doing?
5. How much is it?

四、1. Xiaoming looks very hungry.
2. The hamburger is three dollars.
3. There are some clouds in the sky.
4. Enjoy your meal!
5. It's going to rain soon.

**答案：**

一、1. C　2. B　3. A　4. A　5. B
二、5　1　4　3　2
三、1. B　2. A　3. C　4. B　5. C
四、1. looks　2. dollars　3. clouds　4. Enjoy　5. rain
五、1. E　2. A　3. D　4. B　5. C
六、1. A
2. B　**点拨**：根据 noodles 可知询问吃什么。
3. C　**点拨**：想要吃是 want to eat。主语是 She，所以 want 用单三形式。
4. B　**点拨**：由 be going to 可知本句的时态为一般将来时。
5. C　**点拨**：Let's 后接动词原形。
6. B　**点拨**：答句为时间，故疑问词用 when。
7. C　**点拨**：由 Look 可知本句的时态为现在进行时，girls 为复数，故 be 动词用 are。
8. B　**点拨**：表达天气用“It will + 表示天气状况的动词. 或 It will be + 表示天气状况的形容词. ”。
9. B　**点拨**：由 ten *yuan* 可知上句询问价格，故选 How much。
10. A　**点拨**：鸟在树上用 in the tree，东西长在树上用 on the tree。

七、1. noodles　2. swimming　3. picnic　4. drinking
5. rabbits　6. snow

八、1. What do you want to drink?
2. What time is it?
3. When is she going to visit her grandparents?
4. It will be sunny tomorrow.
5. It's starting to rain and the birds are flying away.

九、1. T　2. F　3. F　4. T　5. F

十、1. C　2. B　3. C　4. B　5. C

十一、**范文：**

It will be hot in Guangzhou. Jim is going to swim. It will be windy in Hangzhou. Lucy is going to fly a kite. It will snow in Harbin. Susan and some children are going to make a snowman. It will be sunny in Qingdao. Pingping is going to ride a bike.

## 期中检测卷

**听力材料：**

一、1. The cow is drinking water.
2. The wind is blowing and the sun is shining.
3. I can carry this bag.
4. She's watching TV, but the bell rings.
5. My pen is falling down the stairs.

二、1. Dongdong is singing.
2. The boy is playing football.
3. Daming is having a birthday party.
4. The girl is swimming.
5. It's raining.

三、1. What do you want to drink?
2. What time is it?
3. What are you going to do today?
4. Where's your mum?
5. What is he doing?

四、1. What do you want to eat?
2. It will rain in Shanghai.
3. The cow is eating grass.
4. The balloons are flying away.
5. Mr Wang is talking, but the phone rings.

**答案：**

一、1. C　2. A　3. A　4. A　5. B
二、3　1　2　4　5
三、1. A　2. A　3. B　4. A　5. B
四、1. eat　2. rain　3. cow　4. balloons　5. phone
五、1. C　2. C　3. D　4. C　5. B
六、1. play　2. ride　3. half　4. careful　5. picnic
七、1. B
2. C　**点拨**：此句为现在进行时，谓语应为 be 动词 + 动词的现在分词形式。
3. C　**点拨**：由句中的 are 可知，主语应为复数，child 的复数形式为 children。
4. C　**点拨**：动词 hear 后面的人称代词作宾语，故用宾格形式。
5. B　**点拨**：由答语可知，问句是寻求别人帮助的，问句句意为“你能帮助我吗？”。
6. C　**点拨**：由答语可知，问句是询问物品的价格，用 How much 提问。
7. C　**点拨**：与 play 连用时，乐器名称前加 the，球类名称前不能加 the。
8. A　**点拨**：副词 loudly 修饰动词。
9. B　**点拨**：look like 为固定搭配，意为“看起来像……”。
10. B　**点拨**：表示顺承关系，用 and 连接。

八、1. says　2. buy　3. reading　4. rings　5. wants

九、1. What do you want to drink?
2. A hamburger and a cola for me.
3. There is a duck on the pond.
4. I can't carry this desk.
5. When are you going to school?

十、1. They are playing basketball, but it gets too hot.
2. She is listening to music, but the phone rings.
3. I am doing my homework, but the bell rings.
4. He is reading a book, but his sister starts to sing.

十一、sunny; shining; singing; playing; loudly; reading; under; stops; flying; happy

十二、1. T　2. F　3. T　4. F　5. T

十三、**范文：**

**Cashier**: Hello! Can I help you?
**Lucy**: I want a hamburger. What do you want, Lily?
**Lily**: I want a hot dog.
**Cashier**: What do you want to drink?
**Lucy**: A cola for me. What about you, Lily?
**Lily**: I want to drink some orange juice.
**Cashier**: Is that all?
**Lucy**: Yes. How much is it?
**Cashier**: It's seven dollars and fifty cents.
**Lucy**: Here you are.
**Cashier**: Thank you. Enjoy your meal!

## 月考卷二 Modules 6 ~8 过关检测卷

**听力材料：**

一、1. I want to go into space someday.
2. We live on the earth.
3. Gagarin is from Russia. He is the first taikonaut to go into space in the world.
4. He won a game. He was excited.
5. He likes playing baseball.

二、1. He can't see. I can help him.
2. He flew into space in a spaceship.
3. That day, she went to the airport.
4. Helen is a role model for blind people.
5. The girl is interested in plants.

三、1. Did you see a spaceship?
2. How old was his son last year?
3. When did *Shenzhou V* fly into space?
4. Who gave you the presents?
5. What are you interested in?

四、1. This American spaceship took a man into space.
2. I brought you this book about the Great Wall.
3. Simon was interested in the book too.
4. So I bought her a bicycle.
5. *Shenzhou V* took a Chinese taikonaut into space for the first time.

**答案：**

一、1. A　2. A　3. B　4. A　5. A
二、5　1　3　4　2
三、1. B　2. B　3. A　4. B　5. A
四、1. spaceship　2. about　3. interested　4. bought　5. first
五、1. laugh　smile　shout　2. what　why　where
3. plan　decide　learn　4. coat　raincoat　dress
六、1. A
2. B　**点拨**：选择用 when 还是 where，要看答语表示的是时间还是地点。答语中“in 1998”表示的是时间，所以疑问词要用 when。
3. C　**点拨**：根据后面的“went away”，可以看出描述的是过去发生的事情，所以前面的动词要用过去式。
4. A　**点拨**：he is very famous 是原因，因此用 because 引导从句。
5. B　**点拨**：情态动词后跟动词原形。
6. C
7. C　**点拨**：这里描述的是过去发生的事，要用动词的过去式。
8. A　**点拨**：短语“be interested in”后应跟名词、代词或动词的-ing 形式。
9. B　**点拨**：一般过去时的否定形式要用 didn't，后面的动词用原形。
10. C　**点拨**：由答语可知，是询问地点，故选 C。

七、1. C　2. D　3. E　4. B　5. A
八、1. home　2. paper　3. model　4. space　5. role model
九、1. When was
2. can't see or hear
3. I bought you a present.
4. It was Daming's birthday yesterday.
5. It is easy to make mistakes with English words.

十、1. decided to have a birthday party
2. cleaned the house
3. bought; shop
4. friends
5. played; watched cartoons

十一、1. F　2. T　3. T　4. F　5. T

十二、**范文：**

**My Dream**

I have a wonderful dream. I want to be a good teacher when I grow up. Why do I choose this job? Let me tell you.

First, I like children very much. I think they are lovely. And we can be friends.

Second, I think I can teach the students some useful things every day. They will know more and it will make me happy.

In order to make my dream come true, I must study harder from now on.

## 期末检测卷

**听力材料：**

一、1. I am going to go shopping with my mum this afternoon.
2. It's going to rain soon.
3. I bought some presents for my friends.
4. Daming is having a birthday party.
5. Helen Keller is a role model for you and me.

二、1. I want a hamburger and a cola for lunch.
2. The children are making a snowman.
3. He became a driver.
4. It's going to snow in Beijing.
5. We are going to study History in middle school.

三、1. What do you want to drink?
2. What are you going to study?
3. What is he going to do tomorrow?
4. What does your father do?
5. When was your sister born?

四、 It's Sunday tomorrow. John is going to have a picnic with his parents. Mary is going to the park. Lucy is going to buy a present for her mother. Mike is going to play football with his friends. Ann is going to do some housework.

**答案：**

一、1. C 2. C 3. C 4. B 5. A
二、1. T 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. F
三、1. B 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. B
四、1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T
五、1. C 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. C
六、1. dark 2. dollar 3. careful 4. spell 5. spaceship
七、1. B
2. C **点拨**：前后句是并列关系，因此用 and 连接。
3. C **点拨**：buy sth. for sb. 意为“给某人买某物”。
4. A **点拨**：根据答句来看是询问时间，因此用 when 提问。
5. B
6. C **点拨**：want sb. to do sth. 意为“想要某人做某事”。
7. C **点拨**：从句意来看，是转折关系，因此用 but。
8. B **点拨**：根据答句中的 Because 可知，应该用 why 提问。
9. A **点拨**：be interested in sth. 意为“对某事或某物感兴趣”。
10. B
八、1. I 2. H 3. D 4. J 5. G 6. B 7. C 8. E 9. F
10. A
九、1. F 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. T
十、1. A 2. A 3. A 4. B 5. B
十一、范文：

**My Summer Holiday Plan**

The summer holiday is coming. It's the best time of a year. I can do many interesting things. First, I am going to read books and watch TV. I'm also going to play with my friends. We will go for a walk or play basketball in the park. Then I will travel with my family. I want to go to the beach, because I really want to swim in the sea. I hope I will have a happy summer holiday.

# 课时部分

## Module 1

### Unit 1 I want a hot dog, please.

一、F G I E D A C B H
1. A B F
2. C D E G H I
二、1. A 2. C 3. C 4. A 5. B
**方法点拨**：此题用**分类记忆法**解答。此题考查单词的类别。我们可以将单词进行分类比较，归纳整理，使零乱的单词系统化，以突出其联系性、条理性、完整性。这五个小题分别考查了这五类单词：1. 饮料类；2. 货币类；3. 肉类；4. 食物类；5. 数词类。通过分类排除，即可得出答案。
三、1. tea 2. cashier 3. cola 4. dollars 5. careful
6. cents
四、1. A **点拨**：want 意为“想要”，用法为 want + 名词或 want to + 动词原形。bread 为名词，又因主语为 I，故选 A。
2. B **点拨**：look 在此句中意为“看上去”。句中 dog 为第三人称单数形式，故动词 look 应该用第三人称单数形式 looks。
3. A
4. C **点拨**：答句为价格，故上句应是询问价格是多少。How much 用于询问价格。
5. C 6. C 7. B
五、1. Can I help you?
2. How much is the hot dog?
3. Let me take them.
4. I want some bread.
5. This book is twelve dollars.
6. What do you want?
**方法点拨**：此题用**穿针引线法**解答。连词成句题先看标点。如：第 1 小题是问号，先找针尖(疑问词)，再找针体(助动词/be 动词/情态动词)，然后是针鼻子(人称代词或人名)，针尾(动词)，最后是线(余下的部分)。如：第 4 小题是句号，那就是针鼻子(主语)后面的针尾带着一根线(动词 + 宾语 + 其他)。
六、1. A 2. D 3. C 4. E 5. B
七、(一)图 1、3、6 打“√”。
(二)1. F
2. F **点拨**：由短文中的关键信息“…fast food. It's not healthy food.”可推断出题干是错误的。
3. T 4. T 5. T

### Unit 2 What do you want to eat?

一、1. help 2. drink 3. eat 4. dollars 5. cents
二、(答案不唯一)
1. tea juice milk 2. hot dog cake sandwich
3. dollar cent *jiao* 4. two three four
5. pig eat elephant
三、1. you 2. hamburgers 3. want 4. dollars; cents
5. wants
四、1. C **点拨**：由答句 Green tea. 可知问句询问“你想要喝什么?”。故选 C。
2. A **点拨**：由 some 可知，后面应该接可数名词复数或不可数名词。B、C 选项为可数名词单数。故选 A。
3. C 4. C 5. C
五、(答案不唯一)
**Sam**: I want two hamburgers and a cup of milk.
**Amy**: I want chicken and a cup of apple juice.
**Lingling**: I want rice, vegetables and a cola.
**点拨**：联系生活，点餐时可将吃的与喝的自由搭配，只要总价格不超出 20 元即可。
六、1. F 2. A 3. E 4. D 5. C 6. B
七、1. Rice/Noodles; fish/a hot dog
2. a cola/a bottle of juice 3. 略 4. Enjoy
八、

| | Sara | Ben | Mr Smith |
|---|---|---|---|
| Hamburger | | | √ |
| Hot dog | √ | | |
| French fries | √ | | |
| Soup | | √ | |
| Coffee | | | √ |
| Cola | √ | | |
| Chicken | | √ | |

**方法点拨**：此题用**图表对应法**解答。阅读对话时，边读边圈画出食物和饮料类的单词，然后找出对应的人物，最后在表格里根据找出的信息画钩。

### Module 1 能力过关练

#### 听说专练

**听力材料：**

一、1. —What do you want to drink, Lingling?
—I want a cola.
2. —What do you want, Sam? —I want an ice cream.
3. —What do you want to eat, Jack?
—I want some noodles.
4. —What do you want, Tim? —I want a hamburger.
5. —What do you want, Mike? —I want a hot dog.
6. —What do you want to eat, Daming?
—I want some fish.
二、1. Hello, can I help you?
2. I want two hamburgers and a cola, please.
3. I want a hot dog and a cup of orange juice. How much is it?
4. It's ten dollars and twenty-five cents.
5. What do you want to eat?
三、1. Do you like meat? 2. What do you want?
3. How much is the chicken?
4. What do you want to drink?
5. What do you want to eat?
四、**Cashier**: Good afternoon, sir. Can I help you?
**Man**: I want two hamburgers and a cola, please. How much is it?
**Cashier**: It's eleven dollars. Do you want some hot dogs?
**Man**: No, thank you. Here's the money.
**Cashier**: Thank you. Here's your change.

**答案：**

一、5 3 4 2 6 1
二、1. T 2. F 3. F 4. F 5. T
**方法点拨**：此题用**三步两遍听音法**解答。第一步：阅读题干，预估题意。第二步：听录音，捕捉关键信息。第三步：根据录音内容判断句子正误。
三、1. A 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. B
四、1. afternoon 2. two 3. cola 4. eleven 5. hot dogs
五、1. Sam wants to eat two hamburgers.
2. Amy wants to drink a cola.
六、1. —What do you want to eat?
—I want to eat some bananas.
—How much is it?
—It's twelve *yuan*.
2. —What do you want to drink?
—I want to drink a cola.
—How much is it?
—It's one *yuan* and five *jiao*.

#### 读写专练

七、1. Can 2. want 3. eat 4. hamburgers 5. drink
6. How 7. much 8. dollars 9. cents 10. Here
八、1. rice 2. meat; fish; vegetables
3. bread; potatoes 4. fish; chips
九、1. F 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. F
十、范文：
**Cashier**: Can I help you?
**Fangfang**: I want a hot dog and a cola. What do you want, Lingling?
**Lingling**: I want a hamburger.
**Cashier**: What do you want to drink?
**Lingling**: Orange juice, please. How much is it?
**Cashier**: It's nine dollars and seventy-five cents.
**Lingling**: Here you are.
**Cashier**: Thank you.

## Module 2

### Unit 1 When are we going to eat?

一、1. 11:00 2. 8:40 3. 12:13 4. 7:30 5. 10:15

6. 6:45

二、1. picnic　2. cloud　3. raining　4. ducks
5. hungry; lunch

三、1. B　2. A　3. C　4. C　5. C

四、1. C　**点拨**:答句为时间,故问句应该选特殊疑问词 When。
2. A　**点拨**:What time 询问具体时间,故选 A。
3. B　**点拨**:on the pond 为习惯搭配,意为“在池塘里”。
4. B　**点拨**:be going to 句型中 be 动词和主语保持一致。题目中主语为 He,be 动词应该用 is。
5. B　**点拨**:此句为一般将来时。“be going to + 动词原形”表示“将要……”,此句中 rain 为动词原形,意为“下雨”,故选 B。

五、1. I am going to get up at seven o'clock.
2. I am going to have lunch at half past eleven.
3. He is going to play football.
4. She is going to the park.
5. They are going to have a picnic.

六、1. When are we going to eat?
2. What time is it?
3. I am going to have breakfast.
4. There are some clouds in the sky.
5. It is a beautiful day.
6. It's half past twelve.

七、1. B　2. D　3. A　4. E　5. C

八、(一)1. 连图 B　H　D　A
2. 连图 H　G　C　A
3. 连图 E　F　A
**方法点拨**:此题用**抓关键短语法**解答。通过阅读短文,找出与人物动作相关的关键动词短语,根据关键动词短语,找出每个人物对应匹配的图片并连线。
(二)1. F　2. F　3. T　4. F　5. T

## Unit 2　It will snow in Harbin.

一、1. sunny　2. cloudy　3. snow　4. rain　5. windy

二、1. windy　2. cloudy　3. rainy　4. snowy　5. sunny
6. foggy

三、1. to　2. after　3. and　4. at　5. in

四、1. A　**点拨**:描述未来天气的句型为“It will be + 描述天气的形容词.”或“It will + 描述天气的动词.”。
2. C　**点拨**:sunny 为描述天气的形容词,故选 C。
3. A　**点拨**:描述某地的天气,句型为“It will be + 描述天气的形容词 + in + 地点.”或“It will + 描述天气的动词 + in + 地点.”。故选 A。
4. B　**点拨**:在星期类单词前面用介词 on。
5. C　**点拨**:此句为一般将来时,be going to 后面接动词原形,故选 C。　6. B

五、1. D　2. F　3. C　4. B　5. A　6. E

六、1. Is Sam going to play chess?
2. When are we going to eat lunch?
3. What time is it now?
4. What are you going to do?
5. It will be cloudy in Wuhan.

七、1. It will rain in Wuhan. I am going to watch TV.
2. It will be windy in Hangzhou. I am going to fly a kite.
3. It will be cloudy in Tianjin. I am going to read a book.
4. It will be sunny in Yunnan. I am going to play football.

八、(一)1. F　2. T　3. F　4. F　5. T
(二)1. cloudy; cold　2. sunny; warm　3. hot

## Module 2 能力过关练

### 听说专练

**听力材料:**

一、1. I am going to swim this afternoon.
2. It will snow tomorrow.
3. They are going to play chess at four o'clock.
4. The boy is going to the zoo with his friends.
5. Li Ping is going to have a picnic with her friend.

二、　It's eight o'clock. I am going to school with my sister. It's half past ten. I am going to have a class. It's four o'clock. I am going to play football. It's six o'clock. I am going to have dinner.

三、1. What is she going to do?
2. What time is it?
3. What's the weather like in Shanghai?
4. When are you going to get up tomorrow?
5. Will it be sunny tomorrow?

四、　Let's look at the weather tomorrow. It will be windy in Harbin. It will rain in Guangzhou. It will be sunny in Beijing. It will be cold in Xi'an. It will be cloudy in Shanghai.

**答案:**

一、1. T　2. F　3. F　4. T　5. T

二、1—D　2—C　3—A　4—B
**方法点拨**:此题用**三步两遍听音法**解答。第一步:分析图片,预估题意。第二步:听录音,捕捉关键信息。第三步,第二遍听录音,检查核对答案。

三、1. C　2. B　3. B　4. C　5. A

四、1. windy　2. rain　3. sunny
4. cold　5. cloudy

五、1. It's half past seven. I am going to go to school.
2. It's ten o'clock. I am going to read a book.

六、1. It will be cloudy in Wuhan.
2. It will be windy in Beijing.
3. It will snow in Harbin.

### 读写专练

七、1. C　**点拨**:由第二句中“…tigers, elephants, pandas and monkeys.”可知在动物园。
2. C　**点拨**:由本句的后面可知前面说的是动物,故选 C。
3. A　**点拨**:由第三句中的 big 和第四、五句中的 noses,可推测出是大象。
4. B　**点拨**:此句句意为“它们的鼻子可以帮助它们吃喝。”,故动词选 help。
5. B　**点拨**:由后一句“They are rare(稀有的) animals of China.”可知此句中说的是 pandas.

八、1. C　2. C　3. A　4. B　5. B

九、1. F　2. T　3. F　4. F　5. F

十、范文:　**My plan for the weekend**
It will be sunny on the weekend. On Saturday morning, I am going to clean my room. On Saturday afternoon, I am going to do my homework. On Saturday evening, I am going to visit my grandparents. On Sunday morning, I am going to the park with my grandparents. I am going to watch a film in the afternoon. I am going home with my parents in the evening.

## Module 3

## Unit 1　The sun is shining.

一、1. photo; C　2. write; E　3. everyone; D
4. cry; B　5. shine; A

二、1. C　2. B　3. C　4. A　5. C

三、1. crying　2. sun　3. flying　4. sending
5. eating　6. having

四、1. C　**点拨**:look at 表示“看”,后面可以接人或物。
2. B　**点拨**:星期前面用介词 on,表示“在星期几”。
3. C　**点拨**:此句为现在进行时,句型结构为“主语 + be 动词 + 动词的-ing 形式 + 其他.”,主语为 They 故 be 动词用 are。
4. A　**点拨**:此句意为“鸟在树上唱歌。”,鸟在树上用“in the tree”。
5. B　**点拨**:start 意为“开始”。“开始做某事”可以用 start doing sth. 或 start to do sth. 故选 B。
6. C　**点拨**:此句为现在进行时,故 be 动词后面应该用动词的-ing 形式。

五、1. The sun is shining.
2. The birds are flying away.
3. I am sending you some photos.
4. I miss everyone in China.
5. Look at the little dog.
6. The ducks are eating our hamburgers.

六、1. E　2. F　3. A　4. C　5. B　6. D

七、1. D　2. F　3. A　4. G　5. B　6. C　7. E

八、(一)1. Saturday　2. park
3. big; beautiful　4. trees; flowers
5. river; hill
(二)1. F　2. T　3. F　4. F　5. F

## Unit 2　The cows are drinking water.

一、1. A　2. A　3. B　4. A　5. A　6. B　7. A　8. B
9. A　10. A

二、(答案不唯一)1. eat　2. basketball　3. big　4. red
5. bike　6. singing　7. sun　8. in
**点拨**:此题考查单词类别,包括词性和构成。依次是:
1. 动词　2. 合成词　3. 形容词　4. 颜色类名词
5. 交通工具类名词　6. 现在分词　7. 自然类名词
8. 介词

三、1. eating　2. singing　3. shining
4. looking　5. sending

四、1. D　2. B　3. E　4. A　5. C

五、1. C　2. C　3. C
4. B　**点拨**:“look out of”意为“向……外看”,为固定搭配,故选 B。
5. B　**点拨**:look, watch, see 都表示“看”,但用法不同。look 强调“看”的动作;watch 意为“观看;注视”;see 意为“看到”,强调看的结果。此句中是正在观看跑步比赛,应该用 watch,故选 B。
6. B　**点拨**:“在火车上”用“on the train”。

六、1. wind; flying kites　2. is eating
3. are drinking water　4. swimming

七、1. Are; doing　2. they are; they aren't
3. Where are; playing　4. What is; doing
5. children are playing

八、1. B　2. A　3. B　4. C　5. C　6. A　7. B　8. A
方法点拨:此题用**关键词定位法**解答。带着关键词和问题,从文中寻找答案。题 1 中由关键词 weather 可知是询问天气情况,从文中第二句可知天气很好。题 2 询问他们玩的地点,从文中第四句可知答案。题 3 根据关键信息 climbing the hill 搜索答案。题 4 至题 8 根据问题中的人物,可以从文中搜索出答案。

## Module 3 能力过关练

### 听说专练

**听力材料:**

一、1. It's sunny today.
2. The sun is shining.
3. In this photo, the boy is running.
4. The bus is coming to the station.
5. I read an interesting storybook last night.

二、1. The girl is playing the piano.
2. The pupils are having a Chinese lesson.
3. They are rowing a boat on the lake.
4. The sheep are eating grass.
5. He is playing computer games.

三、1. What is Tom doing?
2. What did you do last night?
3. What are you doing now?
4. Where are you?
5. Are you in the library?

四、　These are photos of my friends. Look at the first one. This is Ann. She is singing. Look at the second one. This is John. He is jumping. The girl in the photo is Chen Jie. She is dancing. In this photo, Jack is playing football. And look at the last one. They are Lucy and Lily. They are having lunch.

**答案:**

一、1. C　2. B　3. C　4. A　5. B

二、3　4　1　5　2
方法点拨:此题用**听关键词法**解答。第一遍听题时,抓住所听各题的关键词,直接把关键词对应到相应的图片上;听第二遍时,结合整句信息核对与图片是否相符。

三、1. C　2. C　3. A　4. B　5. B

四、1. singing 2. jumping
3. dancing 4. playing football
5. having lunch
五、1. The cow is eating grass.
2. The fish is swimming.
3. The rabbit is jumping.
4. The ducks are walking.
5. The elephants are drinking water.

**读写专练**

六、1. did 2. had 3. park 4. Look 5. running 6. What
7. ducks 8. swimming 9. on 10. happy
**点拨**:由 last weekend 可知前两句的时态为一般过去时。后面的句子读论 photo,描述照片中的情景用现在进行时,故动词用-ing形式。look at 和 on the pond 为固定搭配。

七、1. It's sunny.
2. They are in Australia.
3. A few young people.
4. They are playing in the water.
5. Yes, they are.

八、1. B **点拨**:由"Peter is a friend of Mary's eight-year-old brother John."可知约翰八岁。
2. C **点拨**:由玛丽的电话内容"He's eating his breakfast."可知选 C。
3. C **点拨**:由"Grandmother is combing his hair."可知奶奶在给约翰梳头。故选 C。
4. B **点拨**:由"The school bus is coming."可知约翰和玛丽乘校车去上学,故选 B。

九、范文: **My classmates**

Look at the playground. Some girls are talking. Liangliang and Xiaoqiang are playing basketball with friends. Zhang Jun is doing the high jump. Li Wei is running. Mingming and Dongdong are playing ping-pong. Look at the classroom. Lucy and Tom are sweeping the floor. Wang Hong is cleaning the blackboard. Pingping and Weiwei are cleaning the desk. They are busy.

## Module 4

### Unit 1 The balloons are flying away!

一、1. A J N 2. C F P 3. B D L 4. G M Q 5. I O R
6. E H K
二、1. balloons 2. buying 3. carry 4. apples
5. phone 6. oranges
三、1. to 2. at 3. on 4. for 5. away
四、1. C **点拨**:本题中 like 后面接可数名词复数或不可数名词表示喜欢某物。apple 和 hamburger 为可数名词单数,故选 tea。
2. B **点拨**:此句为肯定回答,非自问自答,故选 B。
3. B 4. A 5. A 6. B
五、1. The balloon is flying away.
2. My sister is on the phone.
3. My books are falling.
六、1. E 2. C 3. B 4. D 5. A
七、1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. F 6. T

### Unit 2 The apples are falling down the stairs.

一、1—B 2—C 3—A
二、1. eggs 2. broken 3. panda 4. mess 5. stairs
三、1. me 2. Daming's 3. your 4. balloons 5. trying
四、1. C **点拨**:eggs 为复数,be 动词用 are。
2. B **点拨**:carry 为动词,后面接人称代词宾格形式。
3. B **点拨**:kite 为单数,be 动词用 is。
4. C **点拨**:be 动词是 are,故主语为复数,应该选 desks。
5. B **点拨**:try to do sth. 意为"努力做某事";get on the bus 意为"上公交车",故选 B。
五、1. B 2. B 3. C 4. B 5. A 6. B
六、1. E 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. D
七、1. The balloon is flying away.
2. The apples are falling down the stairs.
八、1. Yes, I can.
2. Who can help me?
3. Where is your mum?
4. What are the pigs doing?
5. Are you going to have a birthday party?
九、1. B 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. C

### Module 4 能力过关练

**听读专练**

**听力材料:**

一、1. dance miss mess
2. tall ball fall
3. buy cry fly
4. nothing everything something
5. banana balloon bird
二、1. The cat likes fish.
2. Simon is making birthday cards.
3. The birds are flying away.
4. The boy is standing up.
5. The egg is broken.
6. Wow! The apple is falling.
三、1. Tom is eating a hamburger.
2. Simon is having a birthday party.
3. Peter is carrying a box.
4. Ann is falling down the stairs.
5. Lucy is playing the piano.
四、 Hello, I am Sam. I am from England. Now I am in Beijing with my family. I've got a pet dog. It's lovely and nice. My sister Amy is going to have a birthday party this Sunday. Now I am making a card for her. Dad is buying things at the supermarket. Mum is making a cake for her. What can my pet dog do for Amy? Oh! It can sing and dance for her!

**答案:**

一、1. 2 3 1 2. 3 1 2 3. 1 3 2 4. 3 2 1 5. 2 1 3
二、3 1 4 6 2 5
三、1—C 2—D 3—A 4—E 5—B
四、1. F 2. T 3. T 4. T 5. F
五、1. Two boys are falling down the bike.
2. My father is carrying the boxes.
3. The pears are falling.
4. My mother is buying things at the supermarket.
5. The animals are having a birthday party.
六、略

**读写专练**

七、1. C 2. E 3. A 4. D 5. B
八、1. C 2. C 3. B 4. C 5. A
九、1. T 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. T
十、范文:

It's Sunday. Mum is washing the apples. Honghong likes eating apples. But she is giving a big apple to her grandma. Dad is working on the computer. His books are falling down the table. Her brother is picking up the books.

## Module 5

### Unit 1 He is playing the *suona*, but the phone rings.

一、1. hot 2. begin 3. go 4. cry 5. loudly 6. up
**方法点拨**:此题用**反义词记忆法**解答。即归纳意义相反或相对的单词,进行对比记忆。如第 1 小题中,冷的反义词是热,故填 hot。
二、1. party 2. dancing 3. phone 4. playing
5. barking 6. Stop
三、1. B 2. C 3. C 4. C 5. A
四、1. B **点拨**:此句描述某人正在做一件事时发生了另一件事。根据句意可知,此处表示转折,故用 but。
2. C **点拨**:everyone 是不定代词,意为"每个人,人人",作主语时,谓语动词用单三形式。
3. A
4. C **点拨**:time 在句子中意为"次",第几次用序数词,故选 C。
5. C **点拨**:"play + 球类"表示"打……球",中间没有任何冠词。
6. C **点拨**:描述某人正在做一件事时发生了另一件事,此句意为"他正穿过街道,但是一辆小汽车过来了。"故选 C。
7. B **点拨**:此题前半句用现在进行时,后半句用一般现在时。故选 B。
8. C **点拨**:"play the + 乐器"表示"演奏……乐器",后半句主语为 the boy,故 play 用单三形式 plays。
五、1. What 2. the 3. first 4. hear
5. comes 6. rings 7. say
六、1. A 2. B 3. B 4. A
七、1. Jim is playing the *suona*.
2. He is singing, but the bell rings.
3. The dog starts to bark loudly.
4. I stop and everyone waits.
5. His friend can't hear him.
八、(一)1—B 2—C 3—C 4—E 5—A 6—D
(二)1. F 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. T

### Unit 2 He's riding his bike, but it starts to rain.

一、1. nothing 2. time 3. playing 4. loudly 5. gets
二、1. loudly 2. rainy 3. starts 4. him 5. we
6. rings 7. walking 8. riding
三、1. afternoon; 下午 2. everyone; 人人,每人
3. football; 足球
4. (答案不唯一) basket; ball; basketball; 篮球
5. (答案不唯一) every thing; everything; 每件事
四、1. B 2. C 3. B 4. C 5. A
五、1. listening to music; to sing 2. watching TV; rings
3. riding his bike; starts to rain
4. eating breakfast; rings 5. is walking; to snow
六、1. Sam isn't listening to music. 2. Yes, I am.
3. I am flying a kite and you are swimming.
4. I am watching TV, but the dog starts to bark.
5. What is she doing?
七、1. E **点拨**:上句为一般疑问句,故答句用 Yes 或 No 回答。
2. C **点拨**:由下句"We are having a birthday party."可知是在询问"你们在干什么?"。
3. A **点拨**:由下句可知话题转到了吹喷呐上,故选 A。
4. B **点拨**:由下句可知上句应该是以 Can 开头的一般疑问句。 5. D
八、1. F 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. F

### Module 5 能力过关练

**听读专练**

**听力材料:**

一、1. We are having a birthday party for my mum.
2. I can play the guitar very well.
3. Mrs Smart is cooking vegetables, but the phone rings.
4. I am reading an interesting story, but the bell rings.
5. They are talking very loudly. I can't hear you.
二、1. I bought a CD for my grandma.
2. My mother is talking to me, but the phone rings.
3. The girl is riding a bike, but it starts to rain.
4. I am doing my homework, but my little sister starts to cry.
5. The baby is sleeping, but the bell rings.
三、1. She is having lunch, but the phone rings.
2. They are singing happily.
3. We are having a picnic.
4. The dog is barking.
5. I wake up from my dream.
四、1. I am doing my homework, but my sister starts to sing.
2. We are playing football, but it starts to rain.
3. They are eating, but the phone rings.
4. Amy is playing the piano.
5. Mum is making a cake for the third time.

**答案:**

一、1. A 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. A

二、1—C 2—E 3—D 4—B 5—A
三、1. F 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. T
四、1. H;G 2. A;C 3. D;F 4. E 5. B
五、1. He is playing computer games, but the phone rings.
2. She is doing exercise, but it gets hot.

**读写专练**

六、1. birthday 2. Daming's 3. What 4. playing
5. Is 6. is 7. Who 8. come 9. comes
七、1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. T
八、1. A 2. C 3. C 4. C 5. B
九、范文：

I am Linda. Today is my birthday. My friends Daming, Amy and Lingling are at my home. We are having a birthday party. Look! Daming is playing the *suona*. Amy is singing. Lingling is dancing. I am playing the piano, but the bell rings. Oh, Mum comes. She brings a big cake for me. We are eating the birthday cake now. We are happy.

## Module 6

### Unit 1 It was Daming's birthday yesterday.

一、1. C 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. A 6. B
二、1. bought;买 2. showed;出示 3. asked;问
4. saw;看见 5. gave;给 6. learnt;学习
7. decided;决定
三、1. A 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. A
四、(一)1. Mum bought him a present. It was a red T-shirt.
2. Grandma bought her a present. It was a big cake.
(二)It's a football. Sam is interested in football.
五、1. E 2. A 3. D 4. C 5. B
六、1. C;a present **点拨**:给某人某物的表达方式是:"give sb. sth. "或"give sth. to sb. "。
2. C;make **点拨**:decide to 后面接动词原形。
3. A;is **点拨**:The book 是单数应该用 is。
4. B;got **点拨**:根据 yesterday 可知动词应该用过去式。
5. B;her **点拨**:thank 后面应该用人称代词的宾格形式。
七、1. Dad bought me a bike.
2. Daming gave a paper spaceship to Simon's mother.
3. It was a book about space travel.
4. What did you buy?
5. It was my birthday yesterday.
八、1—B 2—F 3—D 4—C 5—G 6—E 7—A

### Unit 2 The name of the spaceship is *Shenzhou V*.

一、1. B 2. C 3. B 4. B 5. A 6. A 7. B 8. B
9. A 10. C
二、1. B 2. D 3. A 4. C 5. F 6. E
三、1. to 2. for 3. in 4. at 5. back 6. on
四、(答案不唯一)1. jump 2. singing 3. showed
4. me 5. box 6. for 7. doctor 8. China 9. first
10. grass
五、1. C 2. C 3. B 4. C 5. B 6. C 7. A 8. B
六、5 3 7 1 2 4 6
**点拨**:排序技巧:一读二理三排序。先读句子,理解句意,然后根据逻辑关系推理句子的先后顺序,最后排序并检查。
七、1. The name of the spaceship is *Shenzhou V*.
2. Sam made a paper plane.
3. The spaceship brought back our presents.
4. It took a Chinese taikonaut into space for the first time.
5. It took the national flag of China and some seeds.
八、1. C 2. C 3. C 4. B 5. C

### Module 6 能力过关练

**听说专练**

**听力材料:**

一、1. This sweater is for you.
2. We live on the earth.
3. My brother wants to be a taikonaut.
4. Jack's mum bought him a present.
5. I got the seeds from my grandmother.
二、1. Did you buy me a pair of shoes?
2. What did you do last night?
3. What did Mary buy for her brother?
4. What's it about?
5. What's the name of your penfriend?
三、 It was Lingling's birthday yesterday. She got many presents from her family and friends. Her mother bought her a beautiful dress. Her father bought her a bicycle. Sam bought her a pen. Amy bought her a doll. Daming bought her a book about English. She was very happy.
四、 It was a nice day yesterday. I made a model of a spaceship with my friends. It's blue and white. Then I went to bed and had a dream. It took me and my friends into space for the first time. We were happy.

**答案:**

一、1. B 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. B
二、1. B 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. C
三、1—B 2—D 3—A 4—E 5—C
四、was model blue bed dream took space first happy
五、2. On Amy's birthday, Lingling bought her a kite.
3. On Lingling's birthday, Daming bought her a book.
4. On Mike's birthday, Tom bought him a pen.
六、1. Xia Yu was interested in the toy cars.
2. Li Hao was interested in playing chess.
3. Mike was interested in flying the kite.

**读写专练**

七、1. took 2. saw 3. told 4. couldn't 5. helped 6. saw
7. ran 8. was 9. were 10. thanked 11. said
八、1. He was thirty years old. 2. He lived in a big city.
3. Because he had long hair.
4. He found a cap in his hair. 5. He worked in the army.
九、1. F 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. T
十、范文:

I am Lanlan. It was my birthday yesterday. I got many presents from my family and friends.

My mum bought me a cake. My dad bought me a new schoolbag. My friend Honghong gave me some balloons. My friend Lily gave me a lovely doll.

## Module 7

### Unit 1 He spent about twenty-one hours in space.

一、1. October 2. spends 3. flew 4. video 5. proud
6. about
二、1—C 2—F 3—E 4—A 5—B 6—D
三、1. airport(飞机场) 2. someday(有朝一日)
3. classroom(教室) 4. schoolbag(书包)
四、1. C **点拨**:由 a long time ago 可知动词要用过去式。
2. C **点拨**:由 last Sunday 可知动词要用过去式。
3. A **点拨**:在某年、某月或某年某月前用介词 in。
4. B 5. A
6. B **点拨**:be proud of 后面应该用人称代词的宾格形式。
五、1. in 2. about 3. at 4. of 5. into
六、1. My mother was very proud of me.
2. Yang Liwei flew into space in *Shenzhou V*.
3. He did a lot of work there.
4. He spent about twenty-one hours in space.
5. He made a video in space.
6. I want to go into space someday.
七、1. went 2. visit 3. spent 4. first 5. told
八、1. E 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. D
九、1. C 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. B

### Unit 2 She couldn't see or hear.

一、1. blind 2. born 3. lived 4. spell 5. herself
二、1. C 2. A 3. C 4. C 5. C
三、1. see;hear 2. had 3. to speak 4. became
5. to be
四、1. B 2. C 3. B 4. C 5. C 6. C
五、1. but 2. and 3. but 4. but 5. and
六、could couldn't could couldn't couldn't could
七、1. B 2. E 3. C 4. D 5. A 6. F
八、1. Sam was born in the US.
2. She travelled all over the world.
3. She became blind and deaf.
4. She lived to be eighty-seven.
5. Lei Feng is a role model for you and me.
九、1. A 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. C 6. C
十、1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. F

### Module 7 能力过关练

**听说专练**

**听力材料:**

一、1. Zhang Hua flew to Beijing last week.
2. The old man can't see or hear.
3. Nie Haisheng is also a famous taikonaut.
4. Look up at the spaceship flying in the sky.
5. I saw lots of animals there. Where did I go?
二、1. What is your father?
2. When did Yang Liwei fly into space?
3. Could Helen Keller read?
4. Did you go to the farm on Saturday?
5. Were you at home last night?
三、1. Daming made a kite for Simon last Sunday.
2. I spent two hours in the park yesterday.
3. Confucius was a great teacher.
4. All my teachers were proud of me.
四、 Liu Yang is a taikonaut and she is very famous. In 2012, she flew into space and she did a lot of work there. She made a video and lots of people watched it. She came back to the earth and many people were waiting for her. People are proud of her.

**答案:**

一、3 5 1 2 4
二、1. B 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. B
三、1. made a kite 2. two hours 3. a great teacher
4. were proud of
四、1. F 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. T
五、1. The old man couldn't see.
But he could walk.
2. She couldn't walk.
But she could speak.
六、略

**读写专练**

七、6 4 3 2 5 1
八、1. T 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. F
九、1. B 2. C 3. C 4. A 5. C
十、范文: **My role model**

Xiao Hua is my best friend. He was born in Beijing in 2008. He can do a lot of things. He can play chess. He can play basketball. He likes drawing too. He is very active. At home, he often helps his parents. At school, he is helpful too. He studies very hard. He is a good pupil. He is my role model. I should learn from him.

## Module 8

### Unit 1 Why do you have cups on your heads?

一、1. A 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. A
二、1. 来—C 2. 说—H 3. 告诉—E 4. 计划—D
5. 带来—A 6. 微笑—G 7. 喊—F 8. 笑—B
三、1. B 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. A 6. C
四、7 3 9 5 1 6 8 2 4
**点拨**:句子排序题可采用一读二理三排序的方法。先通读,了解句意,然后根据问句找答句,根据前句找联系最紧密的后一句,理一理并排序。
五、1. B 2. A 3. D 4. F 5. C 6. E

六、1. laughing 2. have 3. brought 4. to make
5. say;said 6. to play 7. puts
七、1. What's in your bag?
2. Why are you shouting?
3. She came into our classroom.
4. They went to the playground and played baseball together.
5. Why do you have cups on your heads?
八、1. A 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. C
**方法点拨**:此题用**信息变位法**解答。即抓住题干中的关键信息,代入文章中找到与关键信息相关的原句,仔细阅读该句子,选出答案。如第1小题,先确定题干中的关键信息为"are going to…",然后代入原文定位关键信息,找出关键信息所在的原句"We are going to have a picnic.",细读原句可得出答案选A。

## Unit 2 Why are you wearing a hat?

一、1. cap 2. planned 3. baseball 4. smiles
5. mistake 6. raincoat
二、1. B;jacket 2. A;why 3. C;basketball
4. B;angry 5. A;park 6. A;smiled
三、1. B 2. C 3. C 4. C 5. B 6. C
四、1. he is hungry.
2. Because I'm going to play a baseball game.
3. Because I'm going to the theatre.
4. Because it's going to rain.
五、1—E 2—B 3—D 4—C 5—A
**方法点拨**:此题用**抓关键词法**解答。做这类题一般先圈出每组对话中的关键词,再找出与该词匹配的图片,即可完成连线。如第1小题对话中的关键词是"playing football",踢足球;"sunny",晴天。所以图1对应图片为E,故图1连E。
六、1. D 2. B 3. E 4. A 5. C
七、1. F 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. F

## Module 8 能力过关练

**听说专练**
**听力材料**:
一、1. This cup is yellow. 2. There is a shop over there.
3. She is wearing a hat. 4. This is a model ship.
5. The girl is smiling.
二、1. This is a map of China.
2. We planned to play a baseball game.
3. Keep quiet. Our teacher is angry.
4. I made a mistake with Maths yesterday.
5. The little girl put the T-shirt on and laughed more.
三、1. Why are you crying?
2. Why are you wearing a raincoat?
3. Why are you wearing a T-shirt?
4. Why are you so tired?
5. Why is he wearing sports shoes?
四、**Mum**:Tom, why are you wearing a T-shirt?
**Tom**:Because it's very hot today. And look at my sister Amy. Why is she wearing a new dress?
**Mum**:Oh, she's going to a party. And why is Lingling wearing a cap?
**Tom**:Because she's going to play baseball.
**答案**:
一、3 4 1 5 2
二、1. C 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. B
三、1. B 2. A 3. A 4. A 5. B
四、1. T-shirt 2. Because 3. dress 4. party 5. cap
6. baseball
五、1. —Why are you crying?
—Because I can't find my mum.
2. —Why are you shouting? —Because I am angry.
3. —Why are you eating? —Because I am hungry.
4. —Why are you sleeping? —Because I am tired.

**读写专练**
六、1. B 2. A 3. A 4. B 5. A
七、1. B 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. C
八、1. T 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. T
九、**范文**:
This is Amy's house. There are five rooms in her house, two bedrooms, one living room, one kitchen and one study. Amy likes the study. Because she likes reading books in it.
Ms Smart likes the kitchen. Because she likes cooking delicious food there. Mr Smart likes watching TV. So he likes the living room. Sam likes his bedroom. Because he likes listening to music. Tom likes the living room, too. Because he likes playing with toys there.

## Module 9

## Unit 1 Best wishes to you!

一、1. wishes 2. luck 3. great 4. miss 5. joy
6. future 7. wonderful 8. enjoyed
二、1—C 2—F 3—E 4—B 5—A 6—D
三、1. C 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. A 6. C
四、1. message 2. keep 3. taught 4. say 5. in
五、1. T 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. F
**方法点拨**:此题用**分析判断法**解答。先读句子,理解大意,然后根据句中关键词分析判断与图片内容是否相符。
六、1. B I→me **点拨**:helped 为动词后接人称代词宾格。
2. C lot→lots **点拨**:lots of 意为"大量的"。
3. B us→their **点拨**:enjoy their time 意为"享受他们的时光"。
4. B watching→watch
5. A wants→want **点拨**:我想做某事用"I want to do sth."。
七、1. We enjoyed our time together.
2. You are my best friend.
3. Sam is going to say goodbye.
4. Ms Smart taught us English.
5. You are a naughty but clever boy.
八、1. B 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. A
九、1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. F

## Unit 2 Wishing you happiness every day.

一、1. email 2. letter 3. primary 4. idea 5. happiness
二、1. B 2. B 3. B 4. B 5. C
三、1. B 2. A 3. C 4. E 5. D
四、1. C 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. C 6. C
五、1. writing 2. them 3. First 4. are 5. brought
六、1. C 2. E 3. A 4. B 5. D
七、1. F 2. A 3. D 4. C 5. E 6. B
八、1. Wishing you happiness every day.
2. I am writing goodbye letters.
3. What does she write first?
4. First I write the name of a friend.
5. What a lot of good wishes!
九、1. E 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. D
十、1. She is 12 years old. 2. She taught Lucy Chinese.
3. Yes, she did. 4. She's going to America.

## Module 9 能力过关练

**听说专练**
**听力材料**:
一、1. You are my best friend.
2. We're going to say goodbye soon.
3. I was born in November.
4. The music is wonderful.
5. I am going to watch a football game on TV tomorrow morning.
二、1. We're going to say goodbye to our teachers.
2. Lily is five years old.
3. They had a happy time at school.
4. Come to China and visit the Great Wall.
5. I'm drawing a picture now.
三、1. What are you doing?
2. How many students are there in your class?
3. Will you keep this book forever?
4. What are you writing in your letter?
5. Best wishes to you!
四、1. Good luck to you!
2. Please write a message in this book.
3. I'll keep it forever.
4. Good luck for the future!
5. What a lot of good wishes!
6. Wishing you happiness every day.
**答案**:
一、1. B 2. A 3. A 4. A 5. C
二、1. F 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. T
三、1. C 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. C
四、1. Good luck 2. message
3. keep 4. future
5. What;wishes 6. Wishing;every
五、略

**读写专练**
六、1. F 2. D 3. F 4. A 5. B 6. C
七、1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. F
八、1. B 2. C 3. C 4. B 5. A
九、**范文**:
Dear Xiaoqiang,
We are going to say goodbye to our primary school soon. I enjoyed our time together. We played football on the playground. We had a picnic in the park. We watched football games together.
You brought me lots of joy. You are a nice boy. You often helped me with my Chinese. Thank you very much. You are my best friend. I will miss you. Best wishes to you!
Yours,
Wang Kai

# Module 10

## Unit 1 We're going to different schools.

一、1. ③ ⑧ ⑩ 2. ④ ⑦ ⑪ 3. ⑤ ⑨ ⑭
4. ② ⑬ ⑮ 5. ① ⑥ ⑫
二、1. B 2. C 3. C 4. B 5. B 6. A 7. A 8. C
三、1. China 2. emails 3. reading 4. spoke
5. going 6. schools
四、1. B 2. A 3. A 4. A 5. A
五、1. What;going;study 2. Is she going to 3. will go
4. How will you 5. Why are you
六、1. I'm going to Hangzhou.
I'm going to visit West Lake.
2. I'm going to Park Middle School.
I'm going to study Geography.
七、1. F 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. T

## Unit 2 What are you going to study?

一、1. CHEMISTRY 2. CHINESE 3. HISTORY
4. GEOGRAPHY 5. MATHS 6. ENGLISH
7. ART 8. PHYSICS
二、1. B 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. A
三、1. A 2. B 3. B 4. C 5. B 6. A
**点拨**:前三题考查 be going to 句型,注意 be 动词要和主语保持一致,be going to 后面接动词原形。后三题要从常用法、语法和词语搭配考虑。
四、1. C 2. B 3. E 4. D 5. A
五、1. What are you going to study?
2. How is he going to school?
3. Is Lingling going to study in middle school?
4. Yes, I am. 5. I am not going to study French.
六、1. September 2. first 3. from 4. middle 5. subjects
七、1. A 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. B
八、1. visit Hainan 2. do my homework 3. swim
4. watch TV 5. sleep

## Module 10 能力过关练

**听说专练**
**听力材料**:
一、1. We are going to middle school this September.

2. In middle school, we will study Physics.
3. Are you going to study History?
4. In England, lots of people speak Chinese.
5. He sometimes writes emails to his friends.

二、1. I'm going to Lake Middle School this September.
2. My sister likes Geography very much.
3. My brother is studying in Jinhu Primary School.
4. I will go home by bus.
5. It's time to go to bed.

三、M: Sam, what subject will you study in middle school?
W: I'm going to study Geography. My brother Tom is going to study History. My sister Amy is going to study Physics.
M: Is Jim going to study Chinese?
W: No, he isn't. He doesn't like it. Lily is going to study it. And Jim is going to study Chemistry.

四、 Daming is going to middle school this September. He's really excited. He is going to study French, History, Geography and Chemistry. His best friends Sam and Amy are going back to the UK. They will start middle school, too. Daming will miss them. They will write emails to each other. They will always be friends.

答案:

一、1. A 2. B 3. C 4. B 5. C
二、3 5 1 2 4
三、1—D 2—C 3—E 4—B 5—A
四、1. F 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. F
五、1. He is going to the library. He is going to read books.
2. They are going to the park. They are going to play football.
3. She is going to the classroom. She is going to write a letter.
4. I am going to a restaurant. I am going to have lunch.

**读写专练**

六、1. C 2. F 3. A 4. B 5. D 6. E
七、1. T 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. F
八、1. B 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. A
九、 Hello, everyone! I'm going to middle school in September. I am very excited. Because I am going to study Chinese, English, Maths, History and Geography. I am going to learn lots of new things in middle school. I am also going to meet new friends there. The school is near my home. So I am going to walk to school. I will go to school at seven o'clock in the morning and go home at five o'clock in the afternoon. I will have a happy time there.

# 期末复习训练部分

## Module 1 复习训练

重难点过关检测

**词汇过关**

一、(答案不唯一)1. fish beef 2. dollar cent 3. pear banana 4. hot dog hamburger 5. milk cola 6. nurse farmer
二、1. careful 2. looks 3. enjoy 4. want 5. dollar; cents

**句型语法过关**

三、1. with 2. to 3. and 4. for
四、1. B 点拨:they 为复数,故 be 动词选 are。
2. B 点拨:主语 Lisa 为第三人称单数,故 want 用单三形式 wants。
3. A 点拨:help 是动词,后面应该接人称代词宾格形式。
4. B 5. B 6. B 7. B 8. B
五、1. D 2. F 3. B 4. A 5. E 6. C

**综合运用过关**

六、1. E 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. D
七、

| Menu | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Hamburger | $ | 5.00 | Juice | $ | 3.00 |
| Tea | $ | 2.00 | Fish | $ | 8.00 |
| Rice | $ | 1.00 | Noodles | $ | 7.00 |

## Module 2 复习训练

重难点过关检测

**词汇过关**

一、(答案不唯一)1. C; where 2. A; lunch 3. B; duck 4. B; snowy 5. B; beautiful 6. B; ten
二、1. pond 2. past 3. windy 4. look like 5. dry

**句型语法过关**

三、1. A 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. B
四、1. buy 2. is 3. doing 4. snowy 5. play
五、1. When is she going to have a picnic?
2. What is Simon going to do?
3. It will be warm and sunny in Guangzhou.
4. When are you going to have lunch?
六、1. D 2. B 3. E 4. A 5. C

**综合运用过关**

七、1. B 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. C

## Module 3 复习训练

重难点过关检测

**词汇过关**

一、1. C 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. A 6. B
二、1. B 2. A 3. C 4. E 5. F 6. H 7. D 8. G

**句型语法过关**

三、1. B 2. C 3. B 4. C 5. B 6. C
四、1. are 2. is 3. are 4. sleeping 5. jumping 6. cleaning 7. is
五、1. C 2. D 3. F 4. A 5. B 6. E

**综合运用过关**

六、1. We are playing games in the park.
2. The boy is reading a book now.
3. Where are the birds singing?
4. The ducks are swimming.
5. The sun is shining in the sky.
七、1. F 2. T 3. T 4. T 5. F

## Module 4 复习训练

重难点过关检测

**词汇过关**

一、1. C 2. B 3. B 4. B 5. A 6. A

**句型语法过关**

二、1. C
2. A 点拨:由 sorry 可知"我搬不动这个包",所以选 can't。
3. C 4. C 5. C 6. B 7. C 8. A
三、1. flying 2. is 3. are 4. is 5. swim 6. jump 7. fly 8. carry

**综合运用过关**

四、1. falling 2. can't 3. heavy 4. help 5. carry 6. from
五、1. B 2. D 3. E 4. A 5. C
六、1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T

## Module 5 复习训练

重难点过关检测

**词汇过关**

一、1. C 2. C 3. B 4. C 5. B
二、1. says 2. comes 3. barking 4. playing 5. but 6. nothing 7. hear 8. third time

**句型语法过关**

三、1. B 2. C 3. C 4. B 5. B
四、1. having; rain 2. crossing; comes 3. watching; rings 4. stops; waits 5. says 6. him
五、1. My friend can't hear me.
2. What is Daming doing?
3. My mum is washing clothes, but the phone rings.
4. She played the piano for the third time.
5. I am listening to music, but Tom cries loudly.

**综合运用过关**

六、1. D 2. C 3. B 4. A
七、1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T

## Module 6 复习训练

重难点过关检测

**词汇过关**

一、1. A 2. C 3. A 4. C 5. B 6. C 7. C 8. C
二、1. bought 2. was 3. got 4. interested 5. learnt 6. decided 7. asked 8. took

**句型语法过关**

三、1. her 2. thanked 3. for 4. from 5. about 6. of 7. first 8. to
四、1. My friend bought a book for me.
2. What did Daming make?
3. The bus took us to school.
4. Simon was interested in the book too.
5. Yes, I did.

**综合运用过关**

五、1. D 2. C 3. A 4. B
六、1. B 2. C 3. A 4. C 5. B

## Module 7 复习训练

重难点过关检测

**词汇过关**

一、1. A 2. C 3. B 4. C 5. C 6. C 7. B
二、1. wrote 2. became 3. flew 4. spent 5. could 6. went 7. told 8. draw

**句型语法过关**

三、1. A 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. C 6. A
四、1. E 2. D 3. C 4. F 5. B 6. A
五、1. My friend can run and swim.
2. When was Li Ming born?
3. What did he do last night?
4. Helen couldn't see or hear.
5. Yes, I did.

**综合运用过关**

六、1. He wanted to be a writer. 2. No, he didn't.
3. No, he didn't. 4. No, he didn't.
5. It was a model plane.

## Module 8 复习训练

重难点过关检测

**词汇过关**

一、(答案不唯一)1. baseball 2. why 3. shout 4. dress 5. classroom 6. cloudy
二、1. mistake 2. smile 3. cup 4. planned 5. baseball

**句型语法过关**

三、1. bought 2. saw 3. crying 4. be sunny 5. fly
四、1. C 2. F 3. A 4. B 5. D 6. E
五、1. Why are you wearing a new dress?
2. Because I am angry.
3. Why are you laughing?
4. Because he is playing basketball.
5. Why are you wearing a raincoat?

**综合运用过关**

六、1. wanted 2. was 3. asked 4. said 5. shouted 6. get 7. washing 8. climbed 9. got
七、1—B 2—D 3—E 4—C 5—A

## Module 9 复习训练

重难点过关检测

**词汇过关**

一、1. 圈 great 2. 圈 Chinese 3. 圈 our 4. 圈 lovely 5. 圈 First 6. 圈 us

**句型语法过关**

二、1. B 2. C 3. B 4. C 5. B
三、1. B 2. B 3. B 4. B 5. B
四、1. You are a wonderful friend.
2. I want to remember you all.
3. You taught me Chinese.

4. I enjoyed our time together.
5. You brought us lots of joy.

**综合运用过关**

五、1. E 2. D 3. B 4. A 5. C
六、1. T 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. F

## Module 10 复习训练

### 重难点过关检测

**词汇过关**

一、1. A 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. C
二、1. speech 2. classmates 3. September 4. speak 5. Physics

**句型语法过关**

三、1. for 2. be 3. to 4. on 5. with
四、1. say 2. speak 3. meet 4. excited 5. study 6. write
五、1. How will you go to school?
2. We can write lots of emails.
3. Sam isn't going to study French.
4. Are you going to Lake Middle School?
5. What is he going to study?

**综合运用过关**

六、1. E 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. D
七、1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T

## 全书听力专练

### 听力(一)

听力材料:

一、1. She wrote many books. So she became a writer.
2. I want a cup of green tea.
3. You brought me lots of joy.
4. I like that model plane.
5. "Come here," Mum said.

二、1. I want a hamburger and a cola for lunch.
2. In this photo, the children are making a snowman.
3. Then he became a bus driver.
4. It's going to rain in Beijing.
5. We are going to study History in middle school.

三、1. —How much is it? —It's thirteen dollars.
2. I want a hot dog and an apple.
3. Daming, I bought a present for you.
4. He made a video about his space travel.
5. When do you want to eat?

四、1. What time is it now?
2. Where are you going?
3. Can you sing and dance?
4. What are the rabbits doing?
5. Who can help me?

答案:

一、1. C 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. C
二、1. F 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. F
三、1. B 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. C
四、1. A 2. A 3. A 4. B 5. A

### 听力(二)

听力材料:

一、1. I am late. Everyone is waiting for me.
2. I'll never forget our time together.
3. Why are you so excited?
4. I can't speak English.
5. Be careful! The floor is slippery.

二、1. In this photo, the ducks are swimming on the lake.
2. I can't carry these books. They are falling.
3. It will be hot in July in Beijing.
4. They are going to the park this weekend.
5. He's watching TV, but the phone rings.
6. The little boy is looking out of the window.

三、 Today is Sunday. It's warm and sunny. We are having lunch in a restaurant. Tom is having a hamburger and some fish. I'm eating some bread and chicken. After lunch, we are going to the supermarket. Tomorrow is Ann's birthday. We are going to buy things for the party. We are going to buy some balloons and a big cake.

答案:

一、1. A 2. C 3. B 4. B 5. A
二、4 2 6 3 1 5
三、warm; sunny; hamburger; bread; birthday; party; balloons

### 听力(三)

听力材料:

一、 Look at this photo. It's Saturday. It's warm and sunny. The sun is shining. Some children are having a picnic with Ms Smart. In the photo, Sam is eating a hamburger. Daming is drinking a cola. They are looking at two girls. What are the girls doing? Look, Amy is singing. Lingling is dancing. Ms Smart is smiling and she is eating an orange. They are happy.

二、1. It will snow in Shanghai.
2. I am going to middle school.
3. We are going to study Geography.
4. Good luck for the future.

三、1. Why is she crying?
2. How did Yang Liwei fly into space?
3. Did Helen learn to read and write?
4. Wish you happiness every day.
5. What did you buy?

四、 Tomorrow is Sunday. John is going to have a picnic with his parents. Mary is going to the park. Lucy is going to buy a present for her mother. Mike is going to play football with his friend Tom. Ann is a good girl. She is going to do housework.

答案:

一、1—C 2—A 3—D 4—E 5—B
二、1. B 2. A 3. C 4. B
三、1. C 2. C 3. A 4. A 5. C
四、1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T



典点®

# 活页检测卷

## 后附全书参考答案及点拨

六年级 英语 下

WY版

# Module 1

## Unit 1 I want a hot dog, please.

扫码听读

### 考点直通车

**一、我要掌握的词汇**

1. cola 可乐　2. dollar 美元　3. cent 美分　4. cashier 收银员
5. look 看上去　6. enjoy 享受，享用　7. careful 小心的　8. how much 多少钱

**二、我要掌握的句型**

1. —Can I help you? 你们需要什么？—I want a hot dog, please. 我想要一个热狗。
2. —What do you want? 你想要点什么？—I want a hamburger. 我想要一个汉堡包。
3. —How much is it? 多少钱？
   —It's thirteen dollars and twenty-five cents. 总共十三美元二十五美分。

### 翻译达人秀

课文朗读

②Listen, read and act out.

| 原 文 | 译 文 |
| --- | --- |
| Simon: What do you want, Daming? | 西蒙：大明，你想要什么？ |
| Daming: I don't know. What's a hot dog? Is it really a dog? | 大明：我不知道。热狗是什么？它真的是一条狗吗？ |
| Simon: No, Daming. That's a hot dog. | 西蒙：不是的，大明。那就是热狗。 |
| Daming: It looks good! | 大明：它看起来不错！ |
| Cashier: Can I help you? | 收银员：你们要点什么？ |
| Daming: I want a hot dog, please. | 大明：我想要一个热狗。 |
| Simon: And I want a hamburger. | 西蒙：我想要一个汉堡包。 |
| Simon's dad: A hamburger for me too. | 西蒙的爸爸：我也要一个汉堡包。 |
| Cashier: And to drink? | 收银员：喝的呢？ |
| Simon: I want a cola. | 西蒙：我想要一杯可乐。 |
| Daming: A cola for me too. | 大明：我也要一杯可乐。 |
| Simon's dad: Three colas, please. | 西蒙的爸爸：请来三杯可乐。 |
| Cashier: That's two hamburgers, a hot dog and three colas. | 收银员：那就是两个汉堡包，一个热狗和三杯可乐。 |
| Simon's dad: How much is it? | 西蒙的爸爸：多少钱？ |
| Cashier: It's thirteen dollars and twenty-five cents. | 收银员：总共 13 美元 25 美分。 |

Simon's dad: Here you are.
Cashier: Thank you. Enjoy your meal!
Daming: Let me take them.
Simon's dad: Be careful!
Daming: Oh no! I'm sorry!
Simon: Oh no! My new shorts and shoes!

西蒙的爸爸：给你。
收银员：谢谢。用餐愉快！
大明：我来拿它们吧。
西蒙的爸爸：当心！
大明：哦不！对不起！
西蒙：哦不！我的新短裤和新鞋！

## 考点突破营

1. I want a hamburger. 我想要一个汉堡包。

**解析：** want 作动词，意思是“想要，需要”。下面我们来看看它的用法：

(1) “主语 + want (s) + 名词.”表示“某人想要某物”。

**例句：** He wants a hot dog. 他想要一个热狗。

(2) “主语 + want (s) + to + 动词（短语）原形.”表示“某人想要做某事”。

**例句：** I want to play chess with my friend. 我想和我的朋友下棋。

2. Can I help you? 你们要点什么？

**解析：** 很多英语国家的商店，书店，图书馆等的营业员和餐馆服务员招呼顾客时，经常会用到 Can I help you? 这句话。这是英语国家的习惯用语，根据不同的场合可以翻译为“我能帮你吗?”“您需要点什么?”，答语一般为“I want..., please.”。

**例句：** —Can I help you? 您需要点什么？
—I want some rice and soup, please. 我想要一些米饭和汤。

**知识拓展：** 招呼顾客的其他句子：What can I do for you? May I help you?

3. It looks good! 它看起来不错！

**解析：** looks 是 look 的第三人称单数形式，意思是“看起来”，后面常跟形容词，用来说明人或事物的状态。

**例句：** You look angry. 你看起来很生气。

**知识拓展：** look 作实义动词时，表示“看”，可以独立成句；表示看的内容时，后面要接 at，再接人或物。

**例句：** Look at that big tree! 看那棵大树！

4. How much is it? 多少钱？

**解析：** How much 在这里用来询问物品的价格，意为“多少钱”。

**句型结构：** How much is + 可数名词单数/不可数名词? **答语：** It's + 价格.

**例句：** —How much is the pen? 这支钢笔多少钱？
—It's four *yuan*. 它要四元。

**知识拓展：** 当物品为可数名词复数时，询问价格时 be 动词用 are。

5. It's thirteen dollars and twenty-five cents. 总共 13 美元 25 美分。

易错点提示 dollar 意为“美元”，cent 意为“美分”，都是货币单位，并且都是可数名词，有单复数形式变化。而人民币单位是 *yuan*，没有复数形式。

6. Enjoy your meal! 用餐愉快！

**解析：** enjoy 意为“享用，享受”，它后面可以加三餐类的名词，表示“享用某顿饭”。也可以直接加表示食物或饮料的名词，表示“享用某种食物或饮料”。

**例句：** Enjoy your cake, please. 请享用您的蛋糕。

# Unit 2 What do you want to eat?

## 考点直通车

### 一、我要掌握的词汇

扫码听读

1. meat 肉　2. noodles 面条　3. cheese 奶酪　4. hot dog 热狗
5. hamburger 汉堡包　6. milk 牛奶　7. eat 吃　8. drink 喝
9. want 想要　10. lots of 许多

### 二、我要掌握的句型

1. What do you want to eat? 你想要吃什么？
2. I want to eat some meat. 我想吃些肉。
3. What do you want to drink? 你想要喝什么？
4. So we want a hamburger, noodles, milk and a cola, please.
那么我们想要一个汉堡包、面条、牛奶和一杯可乐。

**拓展内容**

1. What does he/she want to eat? 他/她想要吃什么？
He/She wants... 他/她想要……
2. What do they want to drink? 他们想要喝什么？
They want... 他们想要……

## 翻译达人秀

课文朗读

### ②Listen and read.

| 原文 | 译文 |
| --- | --- |
| Cashier: Can I help you? | 收银员：您要点儿什么？ |
| Dad: I want noodles and a cola. What do you want to eat, Lingling? | 爸爸：我想要面条和一杯可乐。你想吃什么，玲玲？ |
| Lingling: I want a hamburger. | 玲玲：我想要一个汉堡包。 |
| Dad: And what do you want to drink? | 爸爸：你想喝什么？ |
| Lingling: Milk, please. | 玲玲：请给我牛奶。 |
| Dad: So we want a hamburger, noodles, milk and a cola, please. | 爸爸：那么我们想要一个汉堡包、面条、牛奶和一杯可乐。 |
| Cashier: OK. | 收银员：好的。 |

## 考点突破营

1. I want to eat some meat. 我想吃些肉。

**解析：** some 意为“一些”，既可以修饰可数名词复数，也可以修饰不可数名词。

**例如：** some books 一些书　some milk 一些牛奶

**易错点提示** some 一般用于肯定句，在疑问句和否定句中一般需要用 any 代替 some。

**例句：** I don't want any food. 我不想要任何食物。

在希望得到对方肯定回答的问句中，表示请求或建议，用 some。

**例句：** Would you like some tea? 你想要一些茶吗?

2. And I want a hot dog, please, with lots and lots of cheese.

我想要一个热狗，带很多很多奶酪。

**解析：** lots of = a lot of，意为“大量，许多”，修饰可数名词复数和不可数名词。

3. What do you want to eat, Lingling? 你想吃什么，玲玲?

**解析：** 这是询问对方想吃什么的句型。

**句型结构：** What + do + 主语 + want to eat?

**答语：** 主语 + want + (a/an/some) + 食物(, please).

**知识拓展：** 询问对方想喝什么的句型是：What + do + 主语 + want to drink?

其答语为“主语 + want + (a/an/some) + 饮料 (, please).”。

## 我是小作家

### 如何写在快餐店点餐和结账的对话?

**一、思维步骤：**

1. 确定时态为一般现在时。对话角色一般为服务员与顾客或收银员与顾客。
2. 对话中主要运用点餐和结账的相关句型。
3. 通读检查。注意食物和饮料的单复数形式，并保持句子主谓一致。

**二、精彩词句：**

1. 服务员/收银员用语：Can I help you? What do you want to eat/drink? It's...*yuan*/dollar (s)/cent (s). Here you are.
2. 顾客用语：I want a/an/some..., please. How much is it? Thank you.

**三、经典范文：**

**In a restaurant**

Cashier: Can I help you?

Mike: I want a hot dog and some chicken.

Cashier: What do you want to drink?

Mike: I want a cola.

Cashier: A hot dog, some chicken and a cola.

Mike: Right. And how much is it?

Cashier: It's twenty-eight *yuan*.

Mike: Here you are.

Cashier: Thank you.

# Module 2

## Unit 1 When are we going to eat?

### 考点直通车

扫码听读

#### 一、我要掌握的词汇

1. later 后来
2. duck 鸭子
3. pond 水池，池塘
4. cloud 云
5. dry 干的
6. like 像……一样
7. stay 保持，维持
8. to go 剩余
9. look like 看来好像
10. get up 起床
11. have breakfast 吃早饭
12. have a picnic 举行野餐
13. on the pond 在池塘里
14. stay hungry 挨饿
15. dark clouds 乌云

#### 二、我要掌握的句型

1. I'm going to get up and have breakfast. 我要起床吃早餐。
2. —When are we going to eat, Mum? 妈妈，我们什么时候吃饭？—At half past twelve. 12 点半。
3. —What time is it now? 现在几点了？—It's only half past eleven. 现在才 11 点半。

### 翻译达人秀

课文朗读

②Listen, read and act out.

| 原 文 | 译 文 |
| --- | --- |
| Let's have a picnic in the park today! | 我们今天去公园野餐吧！ |
| Hooray! | 万岁！ |
| *Later…* | *后来……* |
| **Simon**: I'm hungry. When are we going to eat, Mum? | **西蒙**：我饿了。妈妈，我们打算什么时候吃饭？ |
| **Simon's mum**: At half past twelve. | **西蒙的妈妈**：12 点半。 |
| **Simon**: What time is it now? | **西蒙**：现在几点啦？ |
| **Simon's mum**: It's only half past eleven. One hour to go! Look, there are some ducks on the pond. | **西蒙的妈妈**：现在才 11 点半。还有一个小时！看，池塘里有一些鸭子。 |
| **Simon**: They're lovely. | **西蒙**：它们很可爱。 |
| **Daming**: Hey, there are some dark clouds in the sky. It's going to rain soon. | **大明**：嘿，天空中有一些乌云。很快就要下雨了。 |
| **Simon's mum**: I don't think so. It's a beautiful day. Let's go! | **西蒙的妈妈**：我不这么认为。今天是一个好天气。我们走吧！ |
| **Simon's mum**: It's half past twelve. Let's have our picnic! | **西蒙的妈妈**：12 点半了。我们来野餐吧！ |

Simon：Oh dear! It's raining now!
Simon's mum：It's dry over there. Run, boys!
Daming：Oh no, look at the ducks! They're eating our sandwiches!
Simon：Naughty ducks!
Simon's mum：It looks like you're going to stay hungry, Simon!

西蒙：哦，天哪！现在下雨了！
西蒙的妈妈：那边是干的。快跑，男孩们！
大明：哦不，看那些鸭子！它们正在吃我们的三明治！
西蒙：淘气的鸭子！
西蒙的妈妈：看来你得饿着了，西蒙！

## 考点突破营

1. I'm going to get up and have breakfast. 我要起床吃早餐。

**解析**：此句为一般将来时。谈论计划或描述打算做某事时，我们常要用到 be going to…句型。

**句型结构**：主语 + be going to + 动词（短语）原形 + 其他.

**例句**：You are going to have lunch. 你要吃午饭了。

2. When are we going to eat, Mum? 妈妈，我们什么时候吃饭？

**解析**：When 意为“什么时候”，既可以询问具体的时间，也可以询问大体的时间。询问某人打算什么时间做某事的句型结构为：

**问句句型结构**：When + be 动词 + 主语 + going to + 动词（短语）原形 + 其他？

**答语**：主语 + be going to + 动词（短语）原形 + 时间.
也可以简略地只回答时间。

**例句**：—When are you going to do your homework? 你打算什么时候做家庭作业？
—I'm going to do my homework at five o'clock. /At five o'clock.
我打算五点钟做家庭作业。/五点钟。

3. —What time is it now? 现在几点了？
—It's only half past eleven. 现在才 11 点半。

**解析**：What time 询问具体的时间，英文中时间的表达方式主要有二种：

①直接表达法：A 整点的时间：整点数 + o'clock　**例如**：7:00　seven o'clock
B 非整点时间：整点数 + 分钟数　**例如**：7:45　seven forty-five

②间接表达法：分钟小于 30，用分钟数 + past + 整点数表示，意为几点过几分。
分钟大于 30，用相差的分钟数 + to + 下一整点数表示，意为几点差几分。
分钟等于 30，用 half past + 整点数表示，意为几点半。
分钟等于 15，用 a quarter 表示。

**例如**：9:10　ten past nine　8:40　twenty to nine　11:30　half past eleven

# Unit 2 It will snow in Harbin.

## 考点直通车


扫码听读

**一、我要掌握的词汇**

1. sunny 晴朗的　2. cloudy 多云的　3. snow 下雪　4. rain 下雨
5. cold 寒冷的　6. windy 刮风的　7. warm 温暖的　8. hot 炎热的

**二、我要掌握的句型**

It will snow in Beijing. 北京将会下雪。

## 翻译达人秀


课文朗读

### ②Listen and read.

| 原 文 | 译 文 |
| --- | --- |
| Let's look at the weather tomorrow. It will snow in Harbin. It will rain in Beijing. It will be cold and windy in Xi'an and it will be warm and sunny in Sanya. | 让我们看看明天的天气。哈尔滨将会下雪。北京将要下雨。西安将是寒冷又多风的天气。三亚将是暖和又晴朗的天气。 |
| Harbin　Beijing　Xi'an　Sanya<br>snow　rain　cold　windy<br>warm　sunny | 哈尔滨　北京　西安　三亚<br>下雪　下雨　寒冷的　刮风的<br>温暖的　晴朗的 |

## 考点突破营

It will snow in Harbin. 哈尔滨将会下雪。

**解析：**这是描述某地未来天气状况的句型。will 表示将要，其否定形式为 won't，表示不会。

**句型结构：**It will + 表示天气状况的动词 + 某地. 或 It will be + 表示天气状况的形容词 + 某地.

## 我是小作家

### 如何写未来的周末计划？

**一、思维步骤：**

1. 描述周末计划，句子时态应该用一般将来时。
2. 开头先总体说明打算过一个怎样的周末。
3. 然后按时间的先后顺序来描述周末计划。
4. 最后描述周末的心情。

**二、精彩词句：**

1. 开头：I will be very busy on the weekend.
2. 中间：On Saturday morning, I am going to visit my grandparents.
3. 结尾：I will be happy this weekend.

**三、经典范文：**

**My weekend**

I will be very busy on the weekend. It will be sunny this weekend. On Saturday morning, I am going to visit my grandparents. I am going to have an English class on Saturday afternoon. I am going to do my homework in the evening. On Sunday, I am going to play with my parents in the park. I will be happy this weekend.

# Module 3

## Unit 1 The sun is shining.

### 考点直通车

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. shine 照耀　2. cry 哭　3. everyone 人人　4. just 就，且请
5. look at 看　6. fly away 飞走　7. in the tree 在树上

二、我要掌握的句型

1. In this photo, the sun is shining. 在这张照片中，太阳正在照耀。
2. The birds are singing in the tree. 鸟儿正在树上歌唱。

### 翻译达人秀

课文朗读

②Listen and read.

| 原 文 | 译 文 |
| --- | --- |
| Dear Lingling,<br>How are you? I had a very interesting day on Saturday. We had a picnic in the park. I am sending you some photos. I miss everyone in China. Please write to me soon.<br>Love,<br>Daming<br>Look at these photos!<br>In this photo, the sun is shining. The birds are singing in the tree. We are looking at some ducks. They look hungry.<br>In this photo, it's starting to rain and the birds are flying away.<br>And just look at this! The ducks are eating our sandwiches! | 亲爱的玲玲：<br>你好吗？在周六，我度过了非常有趣的一天。我们在公园里野餐了。我要给你寄一些照片。我思念在中国的每一个人。请尽快给我写信。<br>爱你的<br>大明<br>看这些照片！<br>在这张照片中，太阳正在照耀。鸟儿正在树上歌唱。我们正在看一些鸭子。它们看起来很饿。<br>在这张照片中，天开始下雨，鸟儿飞走了。<br>看看这张照片！鸭子正在吃我们的三明治！ |

### 考点突破营

1. In this photo, the sun is shining. 在这张照片中，太阳正在照耀。

**解析：**此句为现在进行时的肯定句，描述照片中的情景。现在进行时用来表示现在或现阶段正在发生或进行的动作。

**句型结构**：主语＋be 动词（am /is /are）＋动词的-ing 形式＋其他.

**例句**：I am watching TV now.

我正在看电视。

易错点提示 动词的-ing 形式变化规则：

①一般情况，直接在动词词尾加-ing：

wash—washing　read—reading

②以不发音字母 e 结尾的动词，先去掉 e，再加-ing：

make—making　write—writing　use—using

③以重读闭音节结尾的动词且末尾只有一个辅音字母，要双写最后的辅音字母，再加-ing：

run—running　swim—swimming　put—putting

④以 ie 结尾的动词，先改 ie 为 y，再加-ing：

lie—lying　die—dying　tie—tying

2. The birds are singing in the tree. 鸟儿正在树上歌唱。

in the tree 和 on the tree 都表示“在树上”，其区别是：

（1）in the tree 指物品、动物或人落到树上或爬到树上。

**例句**：There is a bird in the tree. 树上有只鸟。

（2）on the tree 指树木本身长出或结出的东西。

**例句**：There are some apples on the tree. 树上有些苹果。

## Unit 2 The cows are drinking water.

扫码听读

### 考点直通车

**一、我要掌握的词汇**

1. cow 奶牛　2. blow 吹　3. rabbit 兔子　4. jump 跳
5. swim 游泳　6. sing 唱　7. brightly 明亮地　8. strange 奇怪的
9. play hide-and-seek 玩捉迷藏　10. have a lovely time 玩得开心

**二、我要掌握的句型**

1. —What are you doing? 你在干什么？

—I'm cleaning my room. 我在打扫我的房间。

2. Simon and I are playing hide-and-seek.

我和西蒙正在玩捉迷藏。

## 翻译达人秀


课文朗读

### ②Listen and read.

| 原 文 | 译 文 |
| --- | --- |
| Dear Lingling,<br>In this photo, we are in the mountains. The sun is shining and the wind is blowing. The cows are drinking water. The birds are singing. The ducks are swimming. The rabbits are jumping. Simon and I are playing hide-and-seek.<br>We are having a lovely time!<br>Love,<br>Daming | 亲爱的玲玲：<br>在这张照片里，我们在山里。太阳正在照耀，风正在吹。奶牛正在喝水。鸟儿正在歌唱。鸭子正在游泳。兔子正在跳。我和西蒙正在玩捉迷藏。<br>我们正在度过一段愉快的时光！<br>爱你的<br>大明 |

## 考点突破营

1. —What are you doing? 你正在干什么？

—I'm cleaning my room. 我正在打扫我的房间。

**解析**：这是现在进行时的特殊疑问句的问句与答语。用于询问对方现在正在干什么。

**句型结构**：特殊疑问词 + be 动词 + 主语 + 动词的-ing 形式 + 其他？

**例句**：What are you doing? 你正在干什么？

**知识拓展 1**：now 现在，listen 听和 look 看是常见的现在进行时的提示词。

**知识拓展 2**：现在进行时的其他句型：

（1）否定句：主语 + be 动词（am /is /are） + not + 动词的-ing 形式 + 其他.

**例句**：It isn't raining now.

现在不下雨了。

（2）一般疑问句：Be 动词 + 主语 + 动词的-ing 形式 + 其他？

肯定回答：Yes，主语 + be 动词.

否定回答：No，主语 + be 动词 + not.

**例句**：—Are you reading a book? 你正在看书吗？

—Yes, I am. 是的，我正在看。

—Is Sam riding a bike? 萨姆正在骑自行车吗？

—No, he isn't. 不，他没有。

2. Simon and I are playing hide-and-seek. 我和西蒙正在玩捉迷藏。

**解析：**如果有几个不同人称同时作主语，用 and 连接时，人称代词排列要注意顺序。

①单数人称代词并列作主语，其顺序为：

you，he/she/it，I。

②复数人称代词并列作主语，其顺序为：

we，you，they。

易错点提示 如果做错事，需要承担责任时，说话的人一般把 I 放在第一位。

## 我是小作家

### 如何写描述照片或图片中的情景的小作文？

**一、思维步骤：**

1. 短文结构可以采用总—分—总的形式。
2. 首先描述照片中的人物或动物及活动地点。
3. 应用现在进行时描述照片中的景物及人物或动物正在做的事情。
4. 最后表达自己的心情。

**二、精彩词句：**

1. 开头：In this photo，we are in the zoo.
2. 中间：The sun is shining and the wind is blowing.
   The elephants are drinking water.
3. 结尾：We are having a lovely time.

**三、经典范文：**

In this photo，we are in the zoo.

The sun is shining and the wind is blowing.

Jack is looking at the elephants.

The elephants are drinking water.

Tim is looking at the giraffes.

They are eating grass.

Huanhuan is looking at the pandas.

Look! That panda is climbing the tree.

Mary is walking. She is happy.

We are having a lovely time.

# Module 4

## Unit 1 The balloons are flying away!

### 考点直通车

扫码听读

**一、我要掌握的词汇**

1. balloon 气球　2. buy 买　3. thing 东西　4. carry 搬
5. everything 所有的东西　6. supermarket 超市　7. fall 掉落　8. help 帮助
9. have a birthday party 举办生日聚会　10. on the phone 打电话
11. fly away 飞走　12. at the supermarket 在超市

**二、我要掌握的句型**

1. The balloons are flying away! 气球飞走了！
2. —Who can help me? I can't carry everything. 谁能帮助我？我拿不动所有的东西。
   —Sorry, I can't. 对不起，我不能。

### 翻译达人秀

课文朗读

②Listen, read and act out.

| 原 文 | 译 文 |
| --- | --- |
| Daming: Where's your mum? | 大明：你妈妈在哪里？ |
| Simon: She's at the supermarket. She's buying things for your birthday. | 西蒙：她在超市里。她正在为你的生日买东西。 |
| Daming: Am I going to have a birthday party? | 大明：我将有个生日聚会吗？ |
| Simon: Yes, you are! | 西蒙：是的，你将有！ |
| *Later…* | *过了一会儿……* |
| Simon's mum: Who can help me? I can't carry everything. | 西蒙的妈妈：谁能帮助我？我拿不动所有的东西。 |
| Simon: Sorry, I can't. I'm on the phone. | 西蒙：对不起，我不能。我正在打电话。 |
| Daming: I can help you. I can carry this box. | 大明：我能帮助你。我能拿这个盒子。 |
| Simon's mum: Thank you, Daming. | 西蒙的妈妈：谢谢你，大明。 |
| Simon's mum: Be careful. That's the cake. Oh dear! The oranges are falling! | 西蒙的妈妈：小心。那是蛋糕。哦天啊！橘子掉了！ |
| Daming: Simon, come and help us! | 大明：西蒙，快来帮帮我们！ |

| | |
|---|---|
| Simon's mum: The balloons are flying away! | 西蒙的妈妈：气球飞走了！ |
| Simon: But look at the balloons. They say, "Happy Birthday, Daming!" | 西蒙：但是看看气球。上面写着："生日快乐，大明！" |

## 考点突破营

1. Who can help me? 谁能帮助我？

**解析：** Who can help me? 意为"谁能帮助我？"。生活中遇到困难时，我们就可以用这句话向他人寻求帮助。当他人向我们寻求帮助时，如果能够提供帮助，可以回答：I can help you. 我能帮你。如果不能提供帮助，可以回答：Sorry, I can't. 对不起，我不能。/I'm afraid I can't. 我恐怕不能。

易错点提示 can 为情态动词，意为"能，会"，表示能力。它没有人称和数的变化，后面加动词原形。

2. The balloons are flying away! 气球飞走了！

**解析：** 这是一个现在进行时的句子，描述正在发生的事情。

**句型结构：** 主语 + be（am/is /are） + 动词的现在分词 + 其他 .

**例句：** The oranges are falling. 橘子掉了。

3. I can't carry everything. 我拿不动所有的东西。

**解析：** 这是一个含有情态动词 can 的否定句。

肯定句形式为：I can carry everything. 我能搬动所有的东西。

一般疑问句形式为：Can you carry everything? 你能搬动所有的东西吗？

特殊疑问句形式为：Who can carry everything? 谁能搬动所有的东西？

# Unit 2 The apples are falling down the stairs.

扫码听读

## 考点直通车

### 一、我要掌握的词汇

1. stairs 楼梯（常复）
2. mess 凌乱
3. dear 天啊
4. broken 坏的
5. fall down 掉落
6. get on the bus 上公共汽车
7. get off the bus 下公共汽车

### 二、我要掌握的句型

1. Oh dear! I can't carry them all. 哦天啊！我拿不了全部的东西。
2. Everything is falling! 东西都掉下去了！
3. What a mess! 真是一团糟！

## 翻译达人秀

课文朗读

### ②Listen and read.

| 原 文 | 译 文 |
| --- | --- |
| Oh dear! I can't carry them all. Everything is falling! The eggs are broken! | 哦天啊！我拿不了全部的东西。所有的东西都掉下去了！鸡蛋摔碎了！ |
| And the apples are falling down the stairs! | 苹果从楼梯上掉下去了！ |
| Oh no! Now the cola is falling too! | 哦不！现在可乐也掉下去了！ |
| What a mess! Who can help me? | 真是一团糟！谁能帮助我？ |

## 考点突破营

1. Oh dear! I can't carry them all. 哦天啊！我拿不了全部的东西。

**解析**：dear 在这里意为“天啊”。它还有其他含义：“昂贵的”；“亲爱的”。

**例句**：The television is so dear. 这台电视机太贵了。

My dear friend, I miss you very much. 我亲爱的朋友，我非常想念你。

2. Everything is falling! 所有的东西都掉下去了！

**解析**：Everything 为不定代词，意为“所有的东西”，后面的谓语动词应用单数形式。

3. What a mess! 真是一团糟！

**解析**：mess 意为“肮脏；凌乱”，in a mess 表示“杂乱不堪”。本句是感叹句。感叹句是用来表示强烈感情的句子，一般用 what 和 how 引导，句末用感叹号。

## 我是小作家

### 如何写向他人寻求帮助并表达自己能力的小短文？

**一、思维步骤：**

1. 开头简单介绍自己，并运用现在进行时写出自己正在做的事。
2. 中间运用情态动词 can，表达自己会做的事情。
3. 最后对于自己不会做的事情向他人寻求帮助。

**二、精彩词句：**

1. 动词短语：clean the room, have lunch, watch TV, read a book…
2. 结尾句：Who can help me?

**三、经典范文：**

I am a girl. My name is Wang Hong. I am eleven years old. I can do the housework. Today is Sunday. I am at home. I can clean the room. I can sweep the floor. I can empty the trash. I can water the flowers. I can wash the clothes. But I can't cook the meals. Who can help me? Can you help me?

# Module 5

## Unit 1 He is playing the *suona*, but the phone rings.

### 考点直通车

扫码听读

**一、我要掌握的词汇**

1. play 演奏　2. third 第三（个）　3. time 次，回　4. bark（狗）吠，叫
5. loudly 大声地　6. but 但是　7. ring 响　8. bell 铃
9. have a party 举办聚会　10. play the *suona* 吹唢呐

拓展内容

乐器：sax萨克斯管　*erhu*二胡　zither齐特琴

**二、我要掌握的句型**

1. He is playing the *suona*, but the phone rings.
   他正在吹唢呐，但是电话响了。
2. He stops and everyone waits. 他停下来，每个人都等着。

### 翻译达人秀

课文朗读

②Listen and read.

| 原文 | 译文 |
| --- | --- |
| Daming is having a birthday party. He is playing the *suona*, but the phone rings. He stops and everyone waits.<br>Daming is playing the *suona* again, but the bell rings.<br>"Stop!" says Simon. Daming stops. More friends come in. Simon's dog comes in too.<br>Daming is playing the *suona* for the third time, but the dog starts to bark very loudly. His friends can't hear him. "Stop!" Simon says. The dog stops. They all laugh. | 大明正在举行生日聚会。他正在吹唢呐，但是电话响了。他停下来并且每个人都等着。<br>大明再次吹唢呐，但门铃响了。<br>"停!"西蒙说。大明停下来。更多的朋友进来了。西蒙的狗也进来了。<br>大明第三次吹唢呐，但是狗开始非常大声地叫起来。他的朋友们听不见他。"停!"西蒙说。狗停了下来。他们都笑了。 |

### 考点突破营

1. He is playing the *suona*, but the phone rings. 他正在吹唢呐，但是电话响了。
   **解析：**这个句型主要描述了正在做某一件事时，发生了另一件事。句型中前半句时态为现在进行时，后半句时态为一般现在时。句型主要强调在第一件事发生的过程中，第二件事也发生了。but 意为"但是"，表示转折。

**句型结构：**主语＋be＋动词的-ing形式（＋其他），but＋主语＋动词原形/动词的第三人称单数形式(＋其他).

**例句：**She is eating lunch, but the phone rings. 她正在吃午饭，但是电话响了。

易错点提示 句中 play 表示“演奏、弹奏（音乐）”。

注意：①“play＋the＋乐器名称”表示“弹奏某种乐器”，中间必须有 the；

②“play＋球类”表示玩某种球，中间不能加 the。

2. He stops and everyone waits. 他停下来并且每个人都等着。

**解析：**stop 意为“停止”。everyone 意为“每个人”，作主语时，后面动词用第三人称单数。

**知识拓展：**

①stop doing sth. 停止正在做的事情。

**例句：**The teacher comes. Everyone stops talking. 老师来了，每个人停止了讲话。

②stop to do sth. 停止或中断某事后去做另一件事。

**例句：**They stop to have a rest. 他们停下来去休息。

## Unit 2 He's riding his bike, but it starts to rain.

### 考点直通车

**一、我要掌握的词汇**

1. nothing 没有东西，没有事情　2. get 变得　3. wave 挥手
4. ride a bike 骑自行车　5. do exercise 做运动　6. read a book 读书
7. wave to say goodbye 挥手说再见

扫码听读

**二、我要掌握的句型**

1. He's riding his bike, but it starts to rain. 他正在骑自行车，但是开始下雨了。
2. She's doing exercise, but it gets too hot. 她正在做运动，但是天气变得太热了。

### 翻译达人秀

②Listen and read.

课文朗读

| 原 文 | 译 文 |
| --- | --- |
| 1. She's having lunch, but the phone rings. | 1. 她正在吃午餐，但是电话响了。 |
| 2. He's riding his bike, but it starts to rain. | 2. 他正在骑自行车，但是开始下雨了。 |
| 3. She's doing exercise, but it gets too hot. | 3. 她正在做运动，但是天气变得太热了。 |
| 4. She's watching TV, but the bell rings. | 4. 她正在看电视，但是门铃响了。 |
| 5. He's walking in the park, but it starts to snow. | 5. 他正在公园里散步，但是开始下雪了。 |
| 6. He's reading a book, but his sister starts to sing. | 6. 他正在看书，但是他妹妹开始唱歌了。 |

## 考点突破营

1. He's riding his bike, but it starts to rain. 他正在骑自行车，但是开始下雨了。

   **解析：**前半句时态为现在进行时，后半句时态为一般现在时。

   **知识拓展：**

   start to do sth. 或 start doing sth. 表示“开始做某事”。

2. She's doing exercise, but it gets too hot. 她正在做运动，但是天气变得太热了。

   **解析：**get 在句中意为“变得”，后面加形容词，表示人或事物状态的变化。

   **例句：**My mother gets angry. 我妈妈生气了。

## 我是小作家

### 如何写正在做一件事，另一件事也发生的作文？

**一、思维步骤：**

1. 确定时态：现在进行时和一般现在时。
2. 短文中用到的句型为：主语 + be 动词 + 动词的-ing 形式（ + 其他），but + 主语 + 动词原形/动词的单三形式（ + 其他）.
3. 通读检查。注意食物和饮料的单复数形式，并保持句子主谓一致。

**二、精彩词句：**

1. 开头：Today is my birthday. I am having a birthday party at home.
2. 发生的事：We are singing, but the bell rings.
3. 结尾：I am having a great birthday party.

**三、经典范文：**

**My birthday party**

Today is my birthday. I am having a birthday party at home. My mum and dad are cooking in the kitchen. At half past five, Amy comes. She gives me a present. It's a robot. We are playing with the robot, but the bell rings. Lucy and Lily come. They say, "Happy birthday!" and give me a present. It's a kite. I like it. Then the bell rings. My aunt and my cousin come in. My aunt buys a big birthday cake for me. We sing songs and eat the birthday cake. I am having a great birthday party.

# Module 6

## Unit 1 It was Daming's birthday yesterday.

扫码听读

### 考点直通车

**一、我要掌握的词汇**

1. home 回家　2. got（get 的过去式）得到，收到　3. space 太空
4. interested 感兴趣的　5. spaceship 宇宙飞船　6. finish 完成；结束
7. decide 决定　8. paper 纸做的；纸质的　9. space travel 太空旅行
10. be interested in 对……感兴趣

**二、我要掌握的句型**

1. It was Daming's birthday yesterday. 昨天是大明的生日。
2. Simon's mum bought him a present too. 西蒙的妈妈也给他买了一份礼物。

### 翻译达人秀

课文朗读

②Listen and read.

| 原文 | 译文 |
| --- | --- |
| It was Daming's birthday yesterday. He got many presents from his family and friends. Simon's mum bought him a present too.<br>It was a book about space travel. Daming is very interested in space travel. He loves the present very much.<br>Daming showed Simon his birthday present. Simon was interested in the book too. Daming asked him to read the book with him.<br>In the book, they saw many pictures of spaceships from China, Russia and the US. They learnt a lot about space travel.<br>Daming and Simon finished the book. Then they decided to make a paper spaceship together. They gave the spaceship to Simon's mum. Daming thanked her for the birthday present. She was very happy. | 昨天是大明的生日。他从家人和朋友们那里收到了很多礼物。西蒙的妈妈也给他买了一份礼物。<br>它是一本关于太空旅行的书。大明对太空旅行很感兴趣。他很喜欢这件礼物。<br>大明给西蒙看了他的生日礼物。西蒙也对这本书感兴趣。大明让他和自己一起读这本书。<br>在这本书里，他们看到很多来自中国、俄罗斯和美国的宇宙飞船的照片。他们学到了很多有关太空旅行的知识。<br>大明和西蒙看完了这本书。然后他们决定一起做一艘纸质的宇宙飞船。他们把宇宙飞船送给了西蒙的妈妈。大明感谢她送的生日礼物。她非常高兴。 |

## 考点突破营

1. It was Daming's birthday yesterday. 昨天是大明的生日。

**解析：**此句为含有 be 动词的一般过去时的陈述句。一般过去时表示在过去的时间发生的动作或存在的状态，常与表示过去时间的状语连用。be 动词在一般过去时中 am 和 is 变为 was，are 变为 were。

**句型结构：**主语 + was/were + 其他 .

**例句：**I was in Wuhan last year. 我去年在武汉。

2. Simon's mum bought him a present too. 西蒙的妈妈也给他买了一份礼物。

**解析：**此句为含有实义动词的一般过去时的陈述句。谓语动词 bought 是 buy 的过去式。表示“给某人买某物”可以用 buy sb. sth. 或者 buy sth. for sb. ，动词 buy 的后面可以接两个宾语，sb. 为间接宾语，sth. 为直接宾语。

**句型结构：**主语 + bought + 某人 + 某物 . 或：主语 + bought + 某物 + for + 某人 .

**例句：**Mum bought me a new skirt. 妈妈给我买了一条新短裙。

或：Mum bought a new skirt for me.

**知识拓展：**动词过去式的变化规则：

① 一般情况下，在动词原形后直接加-ed。如：want—wanted play—played

② 以不发音的字母 e 结尾的动词，直接加-d。如：hope—hoped live—lived

③以一个辅音字母结尾的重读闭音节单词需双写最后一个辅音字母，再加-ed。如：stop—stopped

④ 以辅音字母 + y 结尾的动词变 y 为 i，再加-ed。如：study—studied worry—worried

⑤有些动词不符合上面的规则，需要特殊记忆。

如：am（is）—was are—were go—went eat—ate buy—bought see—saw teach—taught bring—brought

# Unit 2 The name of the spaceship is *Shenzhou V.*

## 考点直通车


扫码听读

### 一、我要掌握的词汇

1. brought（bring 的过去式）拿来，带来
2. model 模型
3. first 最初（的），第一次（的）
4. national 国家的，民族的
5. seed 种子
6. bring back 带回

### 二、我要掌握的句型

Daming and Simon made a model of a Chinese spaceship.

大明和西蒙做了一个中国宇宙飞船的模型。

## 翻译达人秀

课文朗读

### ②Listen and read.

| 原 文 | 译 文 |
| --- | --- |
| Daming and Simon made a model of a Chinese spaceship. The name of the spaceship is *Shenzhou V*. In 2003, it took a Chinese taikonaut into space for the first time. It took the national flag of China and some seeds too. | 大明和西蒙做了一个中国宇宙飞船的模型。这艘宇宙飞船的名字是“神舟五号”。2003 年，它第一次载着一名中国宇航员进入太空。它还载着中国国旗和一些种子。 |

## 考点突破营

Daming and Simon made a model of a Chinese spaceship.

大明和西蒙做了一个中国宇宙飞船的模型。

**解析**：此句中 of 意为“（属于）……的”，a model of a Chinese spaceship 指“一个中国宇宙飞船的模型”。

易错点提示 名词所有格表示人或物品的所属关系，有 's 所有格和 of 所有格两种形式。's 所有格一般与有生命的东西连用。of 所有格是由“名词 + of + 名词”构成，一般与无生命的东西连用。

## 我是小作家

### 如何描写生日时收到礼物的作文？

**一、思维步骤：**

1. 确定时态以一般过去时为主。主要描写生日时收到的礼物。
2. 可以按照总—分—总的结构描写。
3. 首先整体介绍为什么收到礼物；然后具体介绍礼物，并对礼物发表一下看法；最后谈一下自己的感受。

**二、精彩词句：**

1. 开头：It was my birthday yesterday.
2. 介绍礼物：Dad gave me a new book about science. My friend brought a new football.
3. 结尾：I was very happy yesterday.

**三、经典范文：**

I am Sam. It was my birthday yesterday. I got many presents from my parents and friends. My mum bought a new T-shirt for me. My dad gave me a new book about science. I am interested in science. I love the book. My friend Mike brought a new football. I like it. I was very happy yesterday.

# Module 7

## Unit 1 He spent about twenty-one hours in space.

### 考点直通车

扫码听读

**一、我要掌握的词汇**

1. spent（spend 的过去式）度过　2. about 大约　3. flew（fly 的过去式）飞，飞行
4. October 十月　5. video 录像　6. proud 感到自豪的，感到骄傲的
7. someday 有朝一日　8. a long time ago 很久以前　9. be proud of 为……感到骄傲

**二、我要掌握的句型**

1. My father, Yang Liwei, is a taikonaut, and he is very famous.
   我爸爸杨利伟是一名宇航员，他很有名。
2. He spent about twenty-one hours in space. 他在太空度过了大约 21 个小时。

### 翻译达人秀

课文朗读

②Listen and read.

| 原 文 | 译 文 |
| --- | --- |
| My father, Yang Liwei, is a taikonaut, and he is very famous.<br>In October 2003, my father flew into space in *Shenzhou V*. He spent about twenty-one hours in space. He did a lot of work there. He also made a video in space. Then he came back to the earth.<br>My mother and I went to the airport to meet my father. We were very happy. It was a great day! I was very proud of him. Now he still tells me about his space travel. I want to go into space someday too. | 我爸爸杨利伟是一名宇航员，他很有名。<br>2003 年 10 月，我爸爸乘坐神舟五号飞进了太空。他在太空度过了大约 21 个小时。他在那里做了很多工作。他还在太空中拍了一段录像。然后他回到了地球。<br>我妈妈和我去机场接我爸爸。我们很高兴。这是很棒的一天！我为他感到非常骄傲。现在他仍然告诉我关于他太空旅行的事情。有朝一日我也想进入太空。 |

### 考点突破营

1. My father, Yang Liwei, is a taikonaut, and he is very famous.
   我爸爸杨利伟是一名宇航员，他很有名。
   **解析：** and 可以连接两个并列的单词、短语或句子。
   **例句：** I like running and jumping. 我喜欢跑和跳。

**知识拓展**：and，but 和 so 的用法：

and 表示并列、顺承、结果、重复等。

**例句**：I have a pencil and a pen. 我有一支铅笔和一支钢笔。

but 表示转折。

**例句**：I like apples, but I don't like oranges. 我喜欢苹果，但是我不喜欢橘子。

so 表示因果关系。

**例句**：I am busy now, so I can't help you. 我现在很忙，所以我不能帮助你。

2. He spent about twenty-one hours in space. 他在太空度过了大约 21 个小时。

**解析**：spent 是 spend 的过去式，意为“度过”。表示某人在某地度过多长时间时，常用句型结构为：“某人 + spend（s） + 时间 + in + 地点 .”。

**例句**：She spends three hours in her office. 她在办公室度过三个小时。

spend 还表示“花费金钱”等。

**例句**：I spent 50 *yuan* on this book. 我花 50 元买了这本书。

## Unit 2 She couldn't see or hear.

### 考点直通车

扫码听读

**一、我要掌握的词汇**

1. born 出生，诞生　2. as 作为　3. became（become 的过去式）变成
4. letter 字母　5. spell 拼写，拼出　6. herself 她自己
7. live 活着　8. all over 到处，遍及，处处　9. role model 模范；榜样

**二、我要掌握的句型**

1. Helen Keller was born in the US in 1880. 海伦·凯勒于 1880 年出生在美国。
2. She couldn't see or hear. 她看不见也听不见。
3. Later Helen learnt to read, write and speak. 后来海伦学会了读、写和说。
4. She wrote a book about herself and travelled all over the world.
   她写了一本关于自己的书并环游世界。
5. She is a role model for blind people, and also for you and me.
   她是盲人的榜样，也是你和我的榜样。

### 翻译达人秀

课文朗读

②Listen and read.

| 原 文 | 译 文 |
| --- | --- |
| Helen Keller was born in the US in 1880. As a baby, she became blind and deaf. She couldn't see or hear. | 海伦·凯勒于 1880 年出生在美国。小时候，她变得又盲又聋。她看不见也听不见。 |

Helen had a teacher. She drew letters in Helen's hand and taught her to spell.

Later Helen learnt to read, write and speak. She wrote a book about herself and travelled all over the world.

Helen lived to be eighty-seven. She is a role model for blind people, and also for you and me.

海伦有一位老师。她在海伦手上画字母并教她拼写。

后来海伦学会了读、写和说。她写了一本关于自己的书并环游世界。

海伦活到了87岁。她是盲人的榜样，也是你和我的榜样。

## 考点突破营

1. Helen Keller was born in the US in 1880. 海伦·凯勒于1880年出生在美国。

**解析：** born 意为“出生”，介绍某人生于某地，一般用一般过去时的被动语态。表示某人出生于某时某地，可以用句型：“某人 + be（过去式） + born + in + 地点 + in + 年份.”。

**例句：** He was born in Shanghai in 2008. 他2008年出生于上海。

2. She couldn't see or hear. 她看不见也听不见。

**解析：** couldn't 是 could not 的缩写形式，意为“不能”。could 是 can 的过去式，多用于一般过去时的句子中，表示某人过去不能做某事。

**句型结构：** 主语 + couldn't + 动词原形 + 其他.

**例句：** He couldn't drive a car then. 那时他不会开车。

3. Later Helen learnt to read, write and speak. 后来海伦学会了读、写和说。

**解析：** learnt 是动词 learn 的过去式，意为“学会”：

①表示学会某种技能时，用“learn + 名词”。

**例句：** She learnt Chinese. 她学会了汉语。

②表示学会做某事，用“learn to + 动词原形”。

**例句：** She learnt to dance. 她学会了跳舞。

4. She wrote a book about herself and travelled all over the world.

她写了一本关于自己的书并环游世界。

**解析：** herself 是反身代词，意为“她自己”，其对应的人称代词是 she。

**知识拓展：** 人称代词对应的反身代词：

（1）I 我—myself 我自己

we 我们—ourselves 我们自己

（2）you 你—yourself 你自己

you 你们— yourselves 你们自己

（3）she 她—herself 她自己

he 他—himself 他自己

（4）it 它—itself 它自己

they 他/她/它们—themselves 他/她/它们自己

5. She is a role model for blind people, and also for you and me.

她是盲人的榜样，也是你和我的榜样。

**解析：** role model 意为“模范，榜样”，“…is a role model for …”意为“……是……的榜样。”当主语是复数时，要用“…are role models for …”的形式。介词 for 后面接人称代词时，要用其宾格形式。

## 我是小作家

### 如何写描述身边的榜样的作文？

**一、思维步骤：**

1. 确定时态：一般现在时和一般过去时。榜样可以是身边的人，也可以是心目中的英雄。
2. 首先简要介绍人物的个人信息；然后介绍他/她的特点或事迹；最后说明他/她是你的榜样，号召大家向他/她学习。注意短文中要写出他/她哪些方面值得你学习，为什么是你的榜样。
3. 通读检查。注意人称代词的使用，并保持句子主谓一致。

**二、精彩词句：**

1. 开头：…was born in…
2. 中间描述：He/She learnt to … He/She studies… very hard. He/She is very kind.
3. 结尾：He/She is my role model. I should learn from him/her.

**三、经典范文：**

**My Role Model**

Mary is my best friend. She was born in China in 2009. When she was four years old, she learnt to play the piano. When she was five years old, she learnt to sing and dance. She likes music. So she studies music very hard. And she is good at music. She has a dream. She wants to be a musician. I like music, too. But I can't play the piano or dance. She is my role model. I should learn from her.

# Module 8

## Unit 1 Why do you have cups on your heads?

### 考点直通车

扫码听读

**一、我要掌握的词汇**

1. cup 杯子
2. planned（plan 的过去式）计划
3. baseball 棒球
4. more 更强烈地
5. smile 微笑
6. mistake 错误
7. with 与……有关
8. said（say 的过去式）说
9. make mistakes 犯错误

**二、我要掌握的句型**

1. Why do you have cups on your heads? 为什么你们的头上顶着杯子？
2. Why are you laughing? 你们为什么在笑？
3. They planned to play a baseball game.
   他们计划打一场棒球比赛。
4. It's easy to make mistakes with English words.
   英语单词方面很容易出错。

### 翻译达人秀

课文朗读

②Listen and read.

| 原 文 | 译 文 |
| --- | --- |
| Sam came into the classroom and saw some friends there. They had cups on their heads. "Why do you have cups on your heads? Why are you laughing?" he asked.<br>Daming told him the story. They planned to play a baseball game. Amy asked Lingling to bring some caps for the game. But Lingling brought some cups. They all laughed. Then they put the cups on their heads and laughed more.<br>Sam smiled. "It's easy to make mistakes with English words," he said. "I make lots of mistakes with Chinese words too. Now look | 萨姆走进教室里，看到一些朋友在那里。他们的头上顶着杯子。"为什么你们的头上顶着杯子？你们为什么在笑？"他问。<br>大明告诉他这个故事。他们计划打一场棒球比赛。埃米让玲玲为比赛带些帽子来。但是玲玲带来了一些杯子。他们都笑了。然后他们就把杯子顶在头上，并笑得更厉害了。<br>萨姆笑了。"英语单词方面很容易出错，"他说。"我也弄错了很多汉语词汇。现在看看我的包里有什么！"萨姆打开了他 |

what's in my bag!" Sam opened his bag. There were baseball caps! "Hooray!" everyone shouted. They put the caps on. Then they went to the playground and played baseball together.

的包。有棒球帽！"万岁！"大家喊道。他们戴上了帽子。然后他们一起去操场打棒球了。

## 考点突破营

1. Why do you have cups on your heads?
为什么你们的头上顶着杯子？

**解析：**这是询问对方做某事的原因的句子，句中"Why"意为"为什么"。

**问句句型：**Why do you + 动词原形（+其他）？

**答句句型：**Because +句子.

**例句：**—Why do you buy so many apples?
你为什么买这么多苹果？
—Because I like eating apples.
因为我喜欢吃苹果。

2. Why are you laughing? 你们为什么在笑？

**解析：**这也是用 why 引导的特殊疑问句。

**问句句型：**Why + be + 主语 + 其他？

**答句句型：**Because +句子.

**例句：**—Why are you so busy?
你为什么这么忙？
—Because I have a lot of work to do.
因为我有很多工作要做。

3. They planned to play a baseball game. 他们计划打一场棒球比赛。

**解析：**plan to do sth. 意为"计划做某事"。

**例句：**I planned to visit my grandparents on Sunday.
我计划周日去看望我的祖父母。

4. It's easy to make mistakes with English words. 英语单词方面很容易出错。

**解析：**这是表达"做某事很容易。"的句型。

**句型结构：**It's easy to +动词原形（+其他）.

**例句：**It's easy to learn English.
学习英语很容易。

# Unit 2 Why are you wearing a hat?

## 考点直通车

### 一、我要掌握的词汇

扫码听读

1. raincoat 雨衣　2. why 为什么　3. because 因为
4. wear 穿；戴　5. play hide-and-seek 玩捉迷藏　6. wear a raincoat 穿雨衣
7. go to the theatre 去剧院　8. look down at 俯瞰

### 二、我要掌握的句型

1. Why are you wearing a raincoat? 你为什么穿着雨衣？
2. Because it's going to rain. 因为天要下雨了。
3. Why are you wearing a hat? 你为什么戴一顶帽子？
4. Because it's going to be sunny. 因为将会是晴天。
5. Because I'm going to play basketball. 因为我将要去打篮球。

## 翻译达人秀

课文朗读

### ②Listen and read.

| 原 文 | 译 文 |
| --- | --- |
| Amy: Why are you wearing a raincoat? | 埃米：你为什么穿着雨衣？ |
| Tom: Because it's going to rain. | 汤姆：因为天要下雨了。 |
| Daming: Why are you wearing a hat? | 大明：你为什么戴一顶帽子？ |
| Lingling: Because it's going to be sunny. | 玲玲：因为将会是晴天。 |
| Dad: Why are you wearing a T-shirt? | 爸爸：你为什么穿T恤衫？ |
| Sam: Because I'm going to play basketball. | 萨姆：因为我将要去打篮球。 |
| Mum: Why are you wearing a dress? | 妈妈：你为什么穿裙子啊？ |
| Amy: Because I'm going to the theatre. | 埃米：因为我将要去剧院。 |

## 考点突破营

1. Why are you wearing a raincoat? 你为什么穿着雨衣？

**解析：** wearing 在句中意为“穿”，询问对方为什么穿某种衣服，可用句型：Why are you wearing (a/an) +服装？答句是由 because 引导的状语从句，because 意为“因为”，后面常接一个句子陈述原因。

**例句：** —Why are you wearing a dress? 你为什么穿着裙子？
—Because I'm going to a party. 因为我将要去参加聚会。

**知识拓展：**put on 穿上　wear 穿；戴　get dressed（自己）穿衣服

2. Why are you wearing a hat? 你为什么戴一顶帽子？

**解析：**wearing 在句中意为“戴”。

**知识拓展：**wearing a hat 戴顶帽子　wearing sunglasses 戴太阳镜

## 我是小作家

### 如何写询问问题并回答原因的小作文？

**一、思维步骤：**

1. 时态可以用一般现在时。
2. 首先总的描述并提出问题；然后列举原因，说明原因可以一一列举；最后总的说一说理由。
3. 通读检查。

**二、精彩词句：**

1. 问原因：Why do you …?
2. 列举原因：First…　Second …　Third…
3. 回答：Because…

**三、经典范文：**

**Why do you like music?**

Everybody likes music. When we walk, we listen to music. When we work, we listen to music. And even when we sleep, we listen to it. Why do you like music?

First, music is everywhere. Listening to music can help us relax. Second, music can cheer us up when we are sad. Third, listening to music can make us sleep well. We love music, because it can make us happier.

## 英美文化角

### 棒球运动简介

棒球运动是一种以棒打球为主要特点，集体性、对抗性很强的球类运动项目，被誉为“竞技与智慧的结合”，是一项集智慧与勇敢、趣味与协作于一体的集体运动项目。它动静结合，分工明确。队员之间既强调个人智慧和才能，又必须讲究战略战术，互相配合。

棒球在美国、日本尤为盛行，被称为“国球”。棒球也是一种团体性体育运动，比赛人数最少为9人。棒球球员分为攻、守两方，利用球棒和手套，在一个扇形的棒球场里进行比赛。比赛时，两队轮流攻守：当进攻球员成功跑回本垒，就可得1分。九局中得分高的一队就胜出。

# Module 9

## Unit 1 Best wishes to you!

### 考点直通车

扫码听读

#### 一、我要掌握的词汇

1. wish 愿望　2. primary 小学的　3. message 留言　4. keep 保留
5. forever 永远　6. joy 乐趣　7. future 将来　8. wonderful 出色的
9. best wishes 最美好的祝愿　10. primary school 小学

#### 二、我要掌握的句型

1. Best wishes to you! 给你最美好的祝愿!
2. Good luck to you! 祝你好运!
3. We're going to say goodbye to our primary school soon.
   我们很快就要和我们的小学说再见了。

### 翻译达人秀

课文朗读

②Listen and read.

| 原 文 | 译 文 |
| --- | --- |
| Daming<br>12 years old<br>China | 大明<br>12 岁<br>中国 |
| Dear friends,<br>We're going to say goodbye to our primary school soon. I enjoyed our time together. I want to remember you all. Please write a message in this book. I'll keep it forever. Thank you!<br>Daming | 亲爱的朋友们:<br>我们很快就要和我们的小学说再见了。我喜欢我们在一起的日子。我想记住你们所有人。请在这本纪念册里写一段留言。我会永远保存它。谢谢你们!<br>大明 |
| Lingling<br>13 years old<br>China | 玲玲<br>13 岁<br>中国 |
| Daming,<br>You're a naughty but lovely boy. You helped me in sport. You brought us lots of joy. Good luck for the future!<br>Lingling | 大明:<br>你是一个淘气但可爱的男孩。你在体育运动方面帮助了我。你给我们带来了很多乐趣。祝你将来好运!<br>玲玲 |

Amy
13 years old
UK

Daming,

We had a happy time at school. You taught me Chinese. Thank you very much. You're a wonderful friend. I will miss you!

Amy

Sam
12 years old
UK

You're my best friend, Daming. I'll never forget our time together. Best wishes to you! Come to the UK to watch football games with me!

Sam

埃米
13 岁
英国

大明：

我们在学校过得很开心。你教了我汉语。非常感谢你。你是一个了不起的朋友。我会想念你的！

埃米

萨姆
12 岁
英国

大明，你是我最好的朋友。我永远不会忘记我们在一起的时光。给你最美好的祝愿！来英国和我一起看足球比赛吧！

萨姆

## 考点突破营

1. Best wishes to you! 给你最美好的祝愿！

   Good luck to you! 祝你好运！

   Good luck for the future! 祝你将来好运！

   **解析：**这三句都是英语中表达祝福的句子，可以写在书信留言里。

   **知识拓展：**表示祝福的句子还有：

   Wish you a good life! 祝你幸福一生！ Wish you all the best! 祝你一切都好！

   May you be happy every day! 祝你天天开心！ May you succeed! 祝你成功！

   Hope everything goes well! 祝你一帆风顺！

2. We're going to say goodbye to our primary school soon. 我们很快就要和我们的小学说再见了。

   **解析：**say goodbye to …表示“和……告别”，注意 say 要根据主语和时态的变化而变化。

   **例句：**Mike said goodbye to his mother and then went to school.

   迈克和妈妈告别，然后上学去了。

# Unit 2 Wishing you happiness every day.

## 考点直通车


扫码听读

### 一、我要掌握的词汇

1. what 多么　　2. happiness 幸福　　3. goodbye letter 告别信

### 二、我要掌握的句型

1. And then I write "Wishing you happiness every day" in every letter.
   然后我在每封信里写了"愿你每天开心"。
2. What a lot of good wishes! 好多美好的祝愿啊!

## 翻译达人秀


课文朗读

### ②Listen and read.

| 原 文 | 译 文 |
| --- | --- |
| Dad: What are you doing, Lingling? | 爸爸：你在干什么，玲玲？ |
| Lingling: I'm writing goodbye letters to all my friends at school. | 玲玲：我正在给学校里我所有的朋友写告别信。 |
| Dad: That's a good idea. What are you writing in your letters? | 爸爸：好主意。你正在信里写什么？ |
| Lingling: Well, first I write the name of a friend. Look! This one is for Amy. | 玲玲：嗯，首先我写一个朋友的名字。看！这一封是给埃米的。 |
| Lingling: And then I write "Wishing you happiness every day" in every letter. | 玲玲：然后我在每封信里写了"愿你每天开心"。 |
| Dad: Wow! There are about forty letters here. What a lot of good wishes! | 爸爸：哇！这里大约有四十封信。好多美好的祝愿啊！ |

## 考点突破营

1. And then I write "Wishing you happiness every day" in every letter.
   然后我在每封信里写了"愿你每天开心"。
   **解析**：Wishing you happiness every day! 是一句祝福语。
2. What a lot of good wishes! 好多美好的祝愿啊!
   **解析**：这是用 what 引导的感叹句。
   **句型结构**：
   ①What a/an + 形容词 + 可数名词单数 (+ 主语 + 谓语)!

**例句**：What a hot day! 多么热的一天啊！

What a naughty boy he is! 他是一个多么淘气的男孩啊！

②What + 形容词 + 可数名词复数/不可数名词（ + 主语 + 谓语）！

**例句**：What fat cats! 多肥的猫啊！

**知识拓展**：感叹句还可以用 how 引导。

**句型结构**：How + 形容词/副词（ + 主语 + 谓语）！

**例句**：How beautiful! 多美啊！

## 我是小作家

### 如何在毕业时写留言，对朋友表达美好祝愿？

**一、思维步骤：**

1. 注意时态：写将来的打算要用一般将来时；写过去的经历要用一般过去时。
2. 首先简单评价对方；然后写两人过去的经历以及对对方的美好祝福；最后向对方提出建议。
3. 注意要用书信格式写留言。

**二、精彩词句：**

1. 开头：You are a kind girl. You are my best friend.
2. 祝福语：Best wishes to you!

Good luck to you!

Good luck for the future!

Wishing you happiness every day!

3. 结尾：Please write an e-mail to me every month!

**三、经典范文：**

Jack

12 years old

UK

Xiao wei,

You are a clever boy. You're my best friend. I'll never forget our time together. You taught me Chinese. You helped me a lot. Thank you very much! Best wishes to you! Please write an email to me every month! I'll miss you.

Jack

# Module 10

## Unit 1 We're going to different schools.

### 考点直通车

扫码听读

#### 一、我要掌握的词汇

1. middle 中间的　2. speech 演说　3. classmate 同班同学　4. leave 离开
5. September 九月　6. excited 激动的　7. geography 地理　8. same 相同的
9. spoke（speak 的过去式）说（某种语言）　10. little 极少量的　11. sometime 某个时候
12. middle school 中学　13. at the same time 同时　14. each other 互相
15. keep on 保持　16. a goodbye speech 一场告别演讲

#### 二、我要掌握的句型

1. We're going to different schools. 我们要去不同的学校了。
2. I'm excited because we're going to study Chinese, English, Maths, History, Geography, and learn lots of new things in middle school.
   我兴奋是因为我们将要学习语文、英语、数学、历史、地理，而且在中学还能学到很多新东西。
3. Keep on practising Chinese in the UK. 在英国要不断练习汉语。

### 翻译达人秀

课文朗读

#### ②Listen and read.

| 原 文 | 译 文 |
| --- | --- |
| *A goodbye speech by Lingling*<br>Dear classmates, we're going to leave our primary school soon and start middle school this September. I'm excited, and also sad.<br>I'm excited because we're going to study Chinese, English, Maths, History, Geography, and learn lots of new things in middle school. We're also going to meet new friends there.<br>At the same time, I'm very sad to say goodbye to you. We're going to different schools. My best friends Sam and Amy are going back to the UK. | *玲玲的告别演讲*<br>亲爱的同学们，我们很快就要离开我们的小学，今年九月份就要开始上中学了。我很兴奋，也很伤心。<br>我兴奋是因为我们将要学习语文、英语、数学、历史、地理，而且在中学还会学到很多新东西。我们还会在那里遇到新朋友。<br>同时，和你们说再见我很伤心。我们要去不同的学校了。我最好的朋友萨姆和埃米要回英国了。他们要去那里的一所新 |

They're going to a new school there. I am happy for them. Four years ago, they spoke only very little Chinese. Now they can speak a lot more. Keep on practising Chinese in the UK. And come back to China sometime!

My dear friends, I'll miss you all. Let's write lots of emails to each other! We'll always be friends. Thank you. And goodbye!

学校。我为他们高兴。四年前，他们只会说非常少的汉语。现在他们会说更多的汉语了。在英国要不断练习汉语。有朝一日再回中国来！

亲爱的朋友们，我会想念你们大家的。让我们彼此之间写很多电子邮件吧！我们会一直是朋友。谢谢你们。再见！

## 考点突破营

1. We're going to different schools. 我们要去不同的学校了。

**解析：**这是现在进行时的句子，用来表示将来的打算。现在进行时表示将来，常有“将要、计划、打算”的含义，这种用法主语通常是人。动词 come、go、leave、start、arrive 等常用现在进行时表示将来。

**例句：**He is leaving Beijing tomorrow. 他明天将要离开北京。

2. I'm excited because we're going to study Chinese, English, Maths, History, Geography, and learn lots of new things in middle school.

我兴奋是因为我们将要学习语文、英语、数学、历史、地理，而且在中学还会学到很多新东西。

**解析：**excited 和 exciting 都与“兴奋”有关，excited 意为“兴奋的、激动的”，用来形容人，描述人的感受；exciting 意为“令人兴奋的、使人激动的”，用来形容物。

**例句：**I am excited because the film is exciting.

我很兴奋，因为这部电影令人兴奋。

易错点提示 lots of = a lot of，表示“很多”，后面可接可数名词复数或不可数名词。

**例句：**There is lots of rain in London. 伦敦有很多雨。

3. Keep on practising Chinese in the UK. 在英国要不断练习汉语。

**解析：**keep on 表示“继续、保持”，后面接动词-ing 形式。

**例如：**Keep on reading, please. 请继续读。

# Unit 2 What are you going to study?

## 考点直通车

### 一、我要掌握的单词或短语

1. chemistry 化学　　2. physics 物理　　3. in September 在九月

4. study French 学法语

扫码听读

### 二、我要掌握的句型

1. Are you going to middle school in September? 九月份你要上中学吗?

2. What are you going to study? 你将要学什么?

## 翻译达人秀

课文朗读

### ②Listen and read.

| 原 文 | 译 文 |
| --- | --- |
| **Amy**: Are you going to middle school in September, Lingling? | **埃米**：九月份你要上中学吗，玲玲? |
| **Lingling**: Yes, I am. I'm going to Park Middle School. What about you? | **玲玲**：是的，我将要去公园中学。你呢? |
| **Amy**: I'm going to Lake Middle School. | **埃米**：我将要去湖泊中学。 |
| **Lingling**: What are you going to study? | **玲玲**：你将要学什么? |
| **Amy**: I'm going to study History, Science, Geography and French. | **埃米**：我将要学历史、科学、地理和法语。 |
| **Lingling**: I'm going to study Physics, Chemistry and Chinese. I'm also going to study History and Geography. But I'm not going to study French. | **玲玲**：我将要学物理、化学和语文。我还会学历史和地理。但是我不准备学法语。 |

## 考点突破营

1. Are you going to middle school in September? 九月份你要上中学吗?

**解析**：此句为一般将来时的一般疑问句，用于询问他人的计划或打算。句中 be going to 表示计划、打算。

**一般将来时常见的句型结构为：**

肯定句：主语 + be（am/is/are）going to + 动词原形 + 其他.

否定句：主语 + be（am/is/are）+ not + going to + 动词原形 + 其他.

一般疑问句：Be（Am /Is/Are）＋主语＋going to ＋动词原形＋其他？

肯定回答：Yes，主语＋be 动词.

否定回答：No，主语＋be 动词＋not.

特殊疑问句：特殊疑问词＋be（am/is/are）＋主语＋going（to ＋动词原形＋其他）？

2. What are you going to study？你将要学什么？

**解析**：此句为 what 引导的一般将来时的特殊疑问句，用来询问对方将要做什么。回答时要根据特殊疑问词来回答。

**知识拓展**：learn 和 study 的区别：

learn 意为“学习，学会”，侧重学习成果；study 意为“学习，研究”，强调学习过程。如：If you study hard，you will learn the language well. 如果你努力学习的话，你会把这门语言学好。注意：此句中 learn 和 study 两词不能互换。但是指某科目的学习时，有时 learn 和 study 可换用。

## 我是小作家

### 如何写进入中学后的打算的作文？

**一、思维步骤：**

1. 确定时态以一般将来时为主，主要运用 be going to 结构。
2. 首先说说九月份将上哪所学校；然后说说怎么上学，在学校学什么；最后简单说说你的朋友的情况。
3. 通读检查。注意句子主谓一致，be going to 后接动词原形。

**二、精彩词句：**

1. 开头：I am going to Huaying Middle School in September.
2. 中间：I am going to school by bus.
   I am going to study Chinese，English…
3. 最后：My friend Xiaohuang is going to this school too.
   I hope we are in the same class and study together.

**三、经典范文：**

My name is Lin Hai. I am going to Huaying Middle School in September. It's big and beautiful. I am going to school by bus. I am going to study Chinese，English，Maths，History，Geography，Physics and Chemistry. My friend Xiaohuang is going to this school too. I hope we are in the same class and study together. We are going to study hard in middle school.

# Module 1

## Unit 1 I want a hot dog, please.

**一、英汉互译。**

1. 想要_____ 2. 看上去_____

3. 可乐_____ 4. cashier _____

5. 美元_____ 6. 美分_____

7. 享受 _____ 8. 小心的_____

**二、用英文写出商品价格。**

1. ¥ 4 _____ 2. ¥ 5.8 _____

3. $ 2.00 _____ 4. $ 3.25 _____

**三、英汉互译。**

1. 你想要什么？_____

2. 我想要一个热狗。_____

3. 我想要两杯可乐。_____

4. Enjoy your meal! _____

5. Be careful! _____

## Unit 2 What do you want to eat?

**一、英汉互译。**

1. 吃_____ 2. 喝_____

3. 热狗_____ 4. 汉堡包_____

5. 面条_____ 6. lots of _____

**二、汉译英。**

1. 你想要吃点什么？_____

2. 你想要喝点什么？_____

3. 它是多少钱？_____

4. 它要 12 美元 25 美分。_____

# Module 2

## Unit 1 When are we going to eat?

**一、英汉互译。**

1. 后来_____
2. 剩余_____
3. 鸭子_____
4. 云_____
5. 干的_____
6. 像……一样_____
7. 看来好像_____
8. 保持_____
9. pond_____
10. have a picnic_____

**二、用英文写出下列时间。**

1. 10：00_____
2. 7：20_____
3. 8：30_____
4. 4：15_____

**三、英汉互译。**

1. 我要起床吃早饭。_____
2. 你将要吃午饭了。_____
3. 我们什么时候吃饭？_____
4. 现在几点了？_____
5. There are some ducks on the pond._____

## Unit 2 It will snow in Harbin.

**一、汉译英。**

1. 晴朗的_____
2. 多云的_____
3. 下雪_____
4. 下雨_____
5. 寒冷的_____
6. 刮风的_____
7. 温暖的_____
8. 炎热的_____

**二、汉译英。**

1. 哈尔滨将要下雪。_____
2. 天津将会是多云的。_____
3. 三亚将会是温暖、晴朗的天气。

_____

# Module 3

## Unit 1 The sun is shining.

**一、英汉互译。**

1. 照耀 _____ 2. 哭 _____ 3. 人人 _____

4. 就，且请 _____ 5. look at _____ 6. on Saturday _____

7. in this photo _____ 8. in the tree _____ 9. fly away _____

**二、写出下列动词的现在分词。**

1. shine _____ 2. sing _____ 3. look _____

4. start _____ 5. fly _____ 6. eat _____

**三、英汉互译。**

1. 在这张照片中，太阳正在照耀。 _____

2. 我们正在看一些鸭子。 _____

3. 鸭子正在吃我们的三明治！ _____

4. Look at the naughty bird. _____

5. I am sending you some photos. _____

## Unit 2 The cows are drinking water.

**一、英汉互译。**

1. 奶牛 _____ 2. 兔子 _____ 3. 唱 _____

4. in the mountains _____ 5. play hide-and-seek _____ 6. have a lovely time _____

**二、写出下列动词的现在分词。**

1. have _____ 2. swim _____ 3. play _____

4. blow _____ 5. drink _____ 6. jump _____

**三、英汉互译。**

1. 你正在干什么？ _____

2. 我正在打扫我的房间。 _____

3. 奶牛正在喝水。 _____

4. In this photo, we are in the mountains. _____

# Module 4

## Unit 1 The balloons are flying away!

**一、英汉互译。**

1. 气球 _____
2. 买 _____
3. 搬 _____
4. everything _____
5. 掉落 _____
6. 帮助 _____
7. 说 _____
8. 能 _____
9. have a birthday party _____
10. on the phone _____
11. 买东西 _____
12. 飞走 _____

**二、英汉互译。**

1. She's buying things for your birthday. _____
2. I am on the phone. _____
3. 橘子掉了。 _____
4. 气球飞走了！ _____
5. 谁能帮助我？ _____
6. 我拿不动所有的东西。 _____
7. 我能帮助你。 _____
8. 我能拿这个盒子。 _____
9. 快来帮帮我们！ _____

## Unit 2 The apples are falling down the stairs.

**一、英汉互译。**

1. stairs _____
2. 凌乱 _____
3. 天啊 _____
4. 不能 _____
5. broken _____
6. fall down _____

**二、汉译英。**

1. 我拿不动全部的东西。 _____
2. 东西都掉下去了！ _____
3. 苹果从楼梯上掉下去了。 _____
4. 真是一团糟！ _____

# Module 5

## Unit 1 He is playing the *suona*, but the phone rings.

**一、英汉互译。**

1. 演奏 _____ 2. 第三 _____ 3. 次 _____

4. bark _____ 5. 大声地 _____ 6. but _____

7. 吹唢呐 _____ 8. 进来 _____ 9. 第三次 _____

**二、写出下列动词的第三人称单数形式。**

1. have _____ 2. play _____ 3. ring _____

4. stop _____ 5. wait _____ 6. say _____

7. come _____ 8. start _____ 9. hear _____

**三、英汉互译。**

1. 大明正在举行生日聚会。 _____

2. 他正在吹唢呐，但是电话响了。 _____

3. Daming is playing the *suona* for the third time, but the dog starts to bark very loudly.

_____

## Unit 2 He's riding his bike, but it starts to rain.

**一、英汉互译。**

1. 没有东西，没有事情 _____ 2. 变得 _____

3. wave _____ 4. dream _____

5. 吃午饭 _____ 6. 骑自行车 _____

7. 做运动 _____ 8. 读书 _____

9. call out my name _____ 10. wave to say goodbye _____

**二、英汉互译。**

1. 她正在吃午餐，但是电话响了。 _____

2. 他正在骑自行车，但是开始下雨了。 _____

3. She's doing exercise, but it gets too hot. _____

4. He's walking in the park, but it starts to snow. _____

# Module 6

## Unit 1 It was Daming's birthday yesterday.

**一、英汉互译。**

1. 回家 _____　2. 得到，收到 _____　3. 太空 _____
4. 感兴趣的 _____　5. spaceship _____　6. 完成 _____
7. 决定 _____　8. 纸做的 _____

**二、写出下列动词的过去式。**

1. buy _____　2. do _____　3. is _____
4. get _____　5. show _____　6. ask _____
7. see _____　8. learn _____　9. finish _____
10. decide _____　11. give _____　12. thank _____

**三、翻译下列句子。**

1. 昨天是大明的生日。_____
2. 他从家人和朋友们那里收到了很多礼物。_____
3. 西蒙的妈妈也给他买了礼物。_____
4. 它是一本关于太空旅行的书。_____
5. 大明对太空旅行很感兴趣。_____

## Unit 2 The name of the spaceship is *Shenzhou V*.

**一、英汉互译。**

1. 模型 _____　2. 最初的，第一次的 _____　3. taikonaut _____
4. 国家的，民族的 _____　5. seed _____

**二、写出下列动词的过去式。**

1. bring _____　2. make _____　3. take _____

**三、英汉互译。**

1. 它带我们去了地球，并且带回了我们的礼物。_____
2. 大明和西蒙做了一个中国宇宙飞船的模型。_____
3. In 2003, it took a Chinese taikonaut into space for the first time. _____
4. It took the national flag of China and some seeds too. _____

# Module 7

## Unit 1 He spent about twenty-one hours in space.

**一、英汉互译。**

1. 大约 _____ 2. 十月 _____ 3. 录像 _____

4. 感到自豪的 _____ 5. someday _____

**二、写出下列动词的过去式。**

1. spend _____ 2. fly _____ 3. come _____

**三、英汉互译。**

1. My father, Yang Liwei, is a taikonaut, and he is very famous. _____

2. In October 2003, my father flew into space in *Shenzhou V*. _____

3. 他在太空度过了大约 21 个小时。_____

4. 他在那里做了很多工作。_____

5. 他还在太空拍了一段录像。_____

6. 我为他感到非常骄傲。_____

## Unit 2 She couldn't see or hear.

**一、翻译下列词汇。**

1. 出生 _____ 2. 作为 _____ 3. 字母 _____

4. 拼写 _____ 5. 她自己 _____ 6. 活着 _____

7. 到处 _____ 8. 模范 _____

**二、写出下列动词的过去式。**

1. become _____ 2. have _____ 3. draw _____

4. teach _____ 5. write _____ 6. travel _____

**三、英汉互译。**

1. 海伦·凯勒于 1880 年出生在美国。_____

2. 她看不见也听不见。_____

3. 海伦活到了 87 岁。_____

4. She is a role model for blind people , and also for you and me. _____

# Module 8

## Unit 1 Why do you have cups on your heads?

**一、英汉互译。**

1. 杯子 _____ 2. 棒球 _____ 3. 计划 _____

4. 更强烈地 _____ 5. 微笑 _____ 6. mistake _____

7. 与……有关 _____

**二、英汉互译。**

1. 为什么你们的头上顶着杯子？ _____

2. 你们为什么在笑？ _____

3. 他们计划打一场棒球比赛。 _____

4. 英语单词方面很容易出错。 _____

5. Sam came into the classroom and saw some friends there.

_____

6. Amy asked Lingling to bring some caps for the game.

_____

7. Then they put the cups on their heads and laughed more.

_____

## Unit 2 Why are you wearing a hat?

**一、英汉互译。**

1. raincoat _____ 2. 为什么 _____

3. 因为 _____ 4. 穿；戴 _____

5. play hide-and-seek _____ 6. wear a raincoat _____

7. go to the theatre _____ 8. look down at _____

**二、汉译英。**

1. 你为什么穿着雨衣？ _____

2. 因为天要下雨了。 _____

3. 你为什么戴一顶帽子？ _____

4. 因为将会是晴天。 _____

# Module 9

## Unit 1 Best wishes to you!

**一、英汉互译。**

1. 愿望 _____ 2. 小学的；初等的 _____ 3. 留言 _____

4. 保留 _____ 5. forever _____ 6. joy _____

7. 将来 _____ 8. 出色的 _____

**二、按要求写出动词的适当形式。**

1. wish（第三人称单数形式） _____ 2. enjoy（过去式） _____

3. help（过去式） _____ 4. brought（原形） _____

5. taught（原形） _____ 6. write（过去式） _____

**三、英汉互译。**

1. 给你美好的祝愿！ _____

2. 祝你好运！ _____

3. 请在这本纪念册里写一段留言。 _____

4. I enjoyed our time together. _____

5. You brought us lots of joy. _____

6. 你是一个了不起的朋友。 _____

7. 我会想念你的！ _____

## Unit 2 Wishing you happiness every day.

**一、英汉互译。**

1. 多么 _____ 2. happiness _____ 3. 想念 _____

4. 写 _____ 5. goodbye letter _____ 6. every day _____

**二、我要掌握的句型**

1. I'm writing goodbye letters to all my friends at school. _____

2. 你正在信里写什么？ _____

3. 首先我写一个朋友的名字。 _____

4. 好多美好的祝愿啊！ _____

# Module 10

## Unit 1 We're going to different schools.

**一、英汉互译。**

1. 中间的_____ 2. 演说_____ 3. 同班同学_____
4. 离开_____ 5. 九月_____ 6. 激动的_____
7. 地理_____ 8. 相同的_____ 9. sometime _____
10. 极少量的_____ 11. 练习_____ 12. 说（某种语言）_____

**二、写出下列短语的含义。**

1. middle school _____ 2. at the same time _____
3. each other _____ 4. keep on _____
5. practise Chinese _____ 6. a goodbye speech _____

**三、英汉互译。**

1. We're going to leave our primary school soon and start middle school this September.

_____

2. 我们还会在那里遇到新朋友。_____
3. 我们要去不同的学校了。_____
4. 在英国要不断练习汉语。_____
5. 有朝一日再回中国来。_____
6. 让我们彼此之间写很多电子邮件吧！_____

## Unit 2 What are you going to study?

**一、英汉互译。**

1. 化学_____ 2. 物理_____ 3. in September _____ 4. study French _____

**二、英汉互译。**

1. 今年九月份你要上中学吗？_____
2. 我将要去公园中学。_____
3. 你将要学什么？_____
4. I'm going to study History, Science, Geography and French. _____

# 参考答案

## Module 1

### Unit 1 I want a hot dog, please.

一、1. want 2. look 3. cola 4. 收银员 5. dollar
6. cent 7. enjoy 8. careful

二、1. four *yuan* 2. five *yuan* and eight *jiao* 3. two dollars
4. three dollars and twenty-five cents

三、1. What do you want? 2. I want a hot dog.
3. I want two colas. 4. 用餐愉快！ 5. 小心！

### Unit 2 What do you want to eat?

一、1. eat 2. drink 3. hot dog 4. hamburger
5. noodles 6. 大量

二、1. What do you want to eat?
2. What do you want to drink?
3. How much is it?
4. It's twelve dollars and twenty-five cents.

## Module 2

### Unit 1 When are we going to eat?

一、1. later 2. to go 3. duck 4. cloud 5. dry 6. like
7. look like 8. stay 9. 水池，池塘 10. 举行野餐

二、1. ten o'clock 2. seven twenty 3. half past eight
4. a quarter past four

三、1. I'm going to get up and have breakfast.
2. You are going to have lunch.
3. When are we going to eat?
4. What time is it now?
5. 池塘里有一些鸭子。

### Unit 2 It will snow in Harbin.

一、1. sunny 2. cloudy 3. snow 4. rain 5. cold
6. windy 7. warm 8. hot

二、1. It will snow in Harbin.
2. It will be cloudy in Tianjin.
3. It will be warm and sunny in Sanya.

## Module 3

### Unit 1 The sun is shining.

一、1. shine 2. cry 3. everyone 4. just 5. 看
6. 在周六 7. 在这张照片里 8. 在树上 9. 飞走

二、1. shining 2. singing 3. looking 4. starting 5. flying
6. eating

三、1. In this photo, the sun is shining.
2. We are looking at some ducks.
3. The ducks are eating our sandwiches!
4. 看这只淘气的鸟。
5. 我正在给你寄一些照片。

### Unit 2 The cows are drinking water.

一、1. cow 2. rabbit 3. sing 4. 在山里 5. 玩捉迷藏
6. 玩得开心

二、1. having 2. swimming 3. playing 4. blowing
5. drinking 6. jumping

三、1. What are you doing? 2. I'm cleaning my room.
3. The cows are drinking water.
4. 在这张照片里，我们在山里。

## Module 4

### Unit 1 The balloons are flying away!

一、1. balloon 2. buy 3. carry 4. 所有的东西
5. fall 6. help 7. say 8. can 9. 举办生日聚会
10. 打电话 11. buy things 12. fly away

二、1. 她正在为你的生日买东西。 2. 我正在打电话。
3. The oranges are falling.
4. The balloons are flying away!
5. Who can help me? 6. I can't carry everything.
7. I can help you. 8. I can carry this box.
9. Come and help us!

### Unit 2 The apples are falling down the stairs.

一、1. 楼梯 2. mess 3. dear 4. can't 5. 破损的
6. 掉落

二、1. I can't carry them all.
2. Everything is falling!
3. The apples are falling down the stairs.
4. What a mess!

## Module 5

### Unit 1 He is playing the *suona*, but the phone rings.

一、1. play 2. third 3. time 4. 狗叫 5. loudly
6. 但是 7. play the *suona* 8. come in
9. the third time

二、1. has 2. plays 3. rings 4. stops 5. waits 6. says
7. comes 8. starts 9. hears

三、1. Daming is having a birthday party.
2. He is playing the *suona*, but the phone rings.
3. 大明第三次吹唢呐，但是狗开始非常大声地叫起来。

### Unit 2 He's riding his bike, but it starts to rain.

一、1. nothing 2. get 3. 挥手 4. 梦 5. have lunch
6. ride a bike 7. do exercise 8. read books
9. 大声喊我的名字 10. 挥手说再见

二、1. She's having lunch, but the phone rings.
2. He's riding his bike, but it starts to rain.
3. 她正在做运动，但是天气变得太热了。
4. 他正在公园里散步，但是开始下雪了。

请沿此虚线裁剪下使用

## Module 6

### Unit 1 It was Daming's birthday yesterday.

一、1. home　2. got　3. space　4. interested
5. 宇宙飞船　6. finish　7. decide　8. paper

二、1. bought　2. did　3. was　4. got　5. showed　6. asked
7. saw　8. learnt　9. finished　10. decided　11. gave
12. thanked

三、1. It was Daming's birthday yesterday.
2. He got many presents from his family and friends.
3. Simon's mum bought him a present too.
4. It was a book about space travel.
5. Daming is very interested in space travel.

### Unit 2 The name of the spaceship is *Shenzhou V*.

一、1. model　2. first　3. 宇航员　4. national　5. 种子

二、1. brought　2. made　3. took

三、1. It took us to the earth. And brought back our presents.
2. Daming and Simon made a model of a Chinese spaceship.
3. 2003 年，它第一次载着一名中国宇航员进入太空。
4. 它还载着中国国旗和一些种子。

## Module 7

### Unit 1 He spent about twenty-one hours in space.

一、1. about　2. October　3. video　4. proud　5. 有朝一日

二、1. spent　2. flew　3. came

三、1. 我爸爸杨利伟是一名宇航员，他很有名。
2. 2003 年 10 月，我爸爸乘坐神舟五号飞进了太空。
3. He spent about twenty-one hours in space.
4. He did a lot of work there.
5. He also made a video in space.
6. I was very proud of him.

### Unit 2 She couldn't see or hear.

一、1. born　2. as　3. letter　4. spell　5. herself　6. live
7. all over　8. role model

二、1. became　2. had　3. drew　4. taught
5. wrote　6. travelled

三、1. Helen Keller was born in the US in 1880.
2. She couldn't see or hear.
3. Helen lived to be eighty-seven.
4. 她是盲人的榜样，也是你和我的榜样。

## Module 8

### Unit 1 Why do you have cups on your heads?

一、1. cup　2. baseball　3. plan　4. more　5. smile
6. 错误　7. with

二、1. Why do you have cups on your heads?
2. Why are you laughing?
3. They planned to play a baseball game.
4. It's easy to make mistakes with English words.
5. 萨姆走进教室里，看到一些朋友在那里。
6. 埃米让玲玲为比赛带些帽子来。
7. 然后他们就把杯子顶在头上，并笑得更厉害了。

### Unit 2 Why are you wearing a hat?

一、1. 雨衣　2. why　3. because　4. wear　5. 玩捉迷藏
6. 穿雨衣　7. 去剧院　8. 俯瞰

二、1. Why are you wearing a raincoat?
2. Because it's going to rain.
3. Why are you wearing a hat?
4. Because it's going to be sunny.

## Module 9

### Unit 1 Best wishes to you!

一、1. wish　2. primary　3. message　4. keep　5. 永远
6. 乐趣　7. future　8. wonderful

二、1. wishes　2. enjoyed　3. helped　4. bring　5. teach
6. wrote

三、1. Best wishes to you!　2. Good luck to you!
3. Please write a message in this book.
4. 我喜欢我们在一起的日子。
5. 你给我们带来了很多乐趣。
6. You're a wonderful friend.
7. I'll miss you!

### Unit 2 Wishing you happiness every day.

一、1. what　2. 幸福　3. miss　4. write　5. 告别信
6. 每天

二、1. 我正在给学校里我所有的朋友写告别信。
2. What are you writing in your letters?
3. First I write the name of a friend.
4. What a lot of good wishes!

## Module 10

### Unit 1 We're going to different schools.

一、1. middle　2. speech　3. classmate　4. leave
5. September　6. excited　7. geography　8. same
9. 某个时候　10. little　11. practise　12. speak

二、1. 中学　2. 同时　3. 互相　4. 保持　5. 练习汉语
6. 一场告别演讲

三、1. 我们很快就要离开我们的小学，今年九月份就要开始上中学了。
2. We're also going to meet new friends there.
3. We're going to different schools.
4. Keep on practising Chinese in the UK.
5. And come back to China sometime.
6. Let's write lots of emails to each other!

### Unit 2 What are you going to study?

一、1. chemistry　2. physics　3. 在九月　4. 学法语

二、1. Are you going to middle school in September?
2. I'm going to Park Middle School.
3. What are you going to study?
4. 我将要学历史、科学、地理和法语。

请沿此虚线裁剪下使用